107th CONGRESS 1st Session

S.7

To improve public education for all children and support lifelong learning.

IN THE SENATE OF THE UNITED STATES

JANUARY 22, 2001

Mr. DASCHLE (for himself, Mr. KENNEDY, Mr. DODD, Mr. BINGAMAN, Mrs. MURRAY, Mr. WELLSTONE, Mr. DORGAN, Ms. MIKULSKI, Mr. LEVIN, Mrs. CLINTON, Mr. SCHUMER, Mr. ROCKEFELLER, Mr. JOHNSON, Mr. CORZINE, Mr. BIDEN, Mr. KERRY, Mr. REED, Mr. DAYTON, and Mr. DURBIN) introduced the following bill; which was read twice and referred to the Committee on Health, Education, Labor, and Pensions

A BILL

To improve public education for all children and support lifelong learning.

1 Be it enacted by the Senate and House of Representa-

2 tives of the United States of America in Congress assembled,

3 SECTION 1. SHORT TITLE; TABLE OF CONTENTS.

4 (a) SHORT TITLE.—This Act may be cited as the

5 "Educational Excellence for All Learners Act of 2001".

6 (b) TABLE OF CONTENTS.—The table of contents of

7 this Act is as follows:

Sec. 1. Short title; table of contents. Sec. 2. References.

TITLE I—HOLDING SCHOOLS ACCOUNTABLE

 $\mathbf{2}$

Sec. 100. Short title.

Subtitle A—Helping Disadvantaged Children

- Sec. 101. Reservations for accountability.
- Sec. 102. Improved accountability.
- Sec. 103. Comprehensive school reform.

Subtitle B—Teachers

Sec. 121. State applications.

Subtitle C—Innovative Education

- Sec. 131. Requirements for State plans.
- Sec. 132. Performance objectives.
- Sec. 133. Report cards.
- Sec. 134. Additional accountability provisions.

TITLE II—CLOSING THE ACHIEVEMENT GAP

Subtitle A—Reauthorization of Programs

Sec. 201. Authorization of appropriations.

Subtitle B—Options: Opportunities to Improve our Nation's Schools

Sec. 211. Options: Opportunities to Improve our Nation's Schools.

Subtitle C—Parental Involvement

- Sec. 221. State plans.
- Sec. 222. Parental assistance.

TITLE III—NATIONAL PRIORITIES WITH PROVEN EFFECTIVENESS

Subtitle A—Qualified Teacher in Every Classroom

Sec. 301. Teacher quality.

Subtitle B-Safe, Healthy Schools and Communities

CHAPTER 1—GRANTS FOR SCHOOL RENOVATION

- Sec. 311. Grants for school renovation.
- Sec. 312. Charter school credit enhancement initiative.

Chapter 2—School Construction

- Sec. 321. Short title.
- Sec. 322. Expansion of incentives for public schools.
- Sec. 323. Application of certain labor standards on construction projects financed under public school modernization program.
- Sec. 324. Employment and training activities relating to construction or reconstruction of public school facilities.
- Sec. 325. Indian school construction.

Chapter 3—21st Century Community Learning Centers

3

Sec. 331. Reauthorization.

CHAPTER 4-ENHANCEMENT OF BASIC LEARNING SKILLS

- Sec. 341. Reducing class size.
- Sec. 342. Reading excellence.
- Sec. 343. Tutorial assistance grants.

CHAPTER 5—INTEGRATION OF TECHNOLOGY INTO THE CLASSROOM

- Sec. 351. Short title.
- Sec. 352. Local applications for school technology resource grants.
- Sec. 353. Teacher preparation.
- Sec. 354. Professional development.

TITLE IV—INDIVIDUALS WITH DISABILITIES EDUCATION ACT

Sec. 401. Full funding of IDEA.

TITLE V—MAKING HIGHER EDUCATION MORE AFFORDABLE

Sec. 501. Increase in maximum Pell grant.Sec. 502. Deduction for higher education expenses.

1 SEC. 2. REFERENCES.

Except as otherwise expressly provided, whenever in this Act an amendment or repeal is expressed in terms of an amendment to, or repeal of, a section or other provision, the reference shall be considered to be made to a section or other provision of the Elementary and Secondary Education Act of 1965 (20 U.S.C. 6301 et seq.).

8 **TITLE I—HOLDING SCHOOLS** 9 **ACCOUNTABLE**

10 SEC. 100. SHORT TITLE.

11 This title may be cited as the "School Improvement12 Accountability Act".

Subtitle A—Helping Disadvantaged Children

3 SEC. 101. RESERVATIONS FOR ACCOUNTABILITY.

4 Section 1003 (20 U.S.C. 6303) is amended to read 5 as follows:

6 "SEC. 1003. RESERVATION FOR ACCOUNTABILITY AND 7 SCHOOL IMPROVEMENT.

8 "(a) STATE RESERVATION.—

9 "(1) IN GENERAL.—Each State educational 10 agency shall reserve 3 percent of the amount the 11 agency receives under part A for each of fiscal years 12 2002 and 2003, and 5 percent of that amount for 13 each of fiscal years 2004 through 2006, to carry out 14 paragraph (2) and to carry out its responsibilities 15 under sections 1116 and 1117, including carrying 16 out its statewide system of technical assistance and 17 providing support for local educational agencies.

18 "(2) LOCAL EDUCATIONAL AGENCIES.—Of the 19 amount reserved under paragraph (1) for any fiscal 20 year, the State educational agency shall allocate at 21 least 80 percent directly to local educational agen-22 cies. In making allocations under this paragraph, the 23 State educational agency shall give first priority to 24 agencies, and agencies serving schools, identified for

1	corrective action or improvement under section
2	1116(c).
3	"(3) USE OF FUNDS.—Each local educational
4	agency receiving an allotment under paragraph (2)
5	shall use the allotment to—
6	"(A) carry out corrective action, as defined
7	in section $1116(c)(5)(A)$, in those schools; or
8	"(B) achieve substantial improvement in
9	the performance of those schools.
10	"(b) NATIONAL ACTIVITIES.—From the total amount
11	appropriated for any fiscal year to carry out this title, the
12	Secretary may reserve not more than 0.30 percent to con-
13	duct evaluations and studies and to collect data.".
14	SEC. 102. IMPROVED ACCOUNTABILITY.
15	(a) STATE PLANS.—Section 1111(b) (20 U.S.C.
16	6311(b)) is amended—
17	(1) in the subsection heading, by striking "AND
18	Assessments" and inserting ", Assessments, and
19	Accountability";
20	(2) by amending paragraph (2) to read as fol-
21	lows:
22	"(2) Adequate yearly progress.—(A) Each
23	State plan shall specify what constitutes adequate
24	yearly progress in student achievement, under the
25	State's accountability system described in paragraph

1	(4), for each school and each local educational agen-
2	cy receiving funds under this part, and for the State.
3	"(B) The specification of adequate yearly
4	progress in the State plan for schools—
5	"(i) shall be based primarily on the stand-
6	ards described in paragraph (1) and the valid
7	and reliable assessments aligned to State stand-
8	ards described in paragraph (3);
9	"(ii) shall include specific numerical ade-
10	quate yearly progress requirements in each sub-
11	ject and grade included in the State assess-
12	ments at least for each of the assessments re-
13	quired under paragraph (3) and shall base the
14	numerical goal required for each group of stu-
15	dents specified in clause (iv) upon a timeline
16	that ensures all students meet or exceed the
17	proficient level of performance on the assess-
18	ments required by this section within 10 years
19	after the effective date of the School Improve-
20	ment Accountability Act;
21	"(iii) shall include other academic indica-
22	tors, such as school completion or dropout
23	rates, with the data for all such academic indi-
24	cators disaggregated as required by clause (iv),
25	but the inclusion of such indicators shall not

decrease the number of schools or local educational agencies that would be subject to identification for improvement or corrective action if the indicators were not included;

"(iv) shall compare separately data for the 5 6 State as a whole, for each local educational 7 agency, and for each school, regarding the per-8 formance and progress of students, 9 disaggregated by each major ethnic and racial 10 group, by English proficiency status, and by 11 economically disadvantaged students as com-12 pared with students who are not economically 13 disadvantaged (except that such disaggregation 14 shall not be required in a case in which the 15 number of students in a category would be in-16 sufficient to yield statistically reliable informa-17 tion or the results would reveal individually 18 identifiable information about individual stu-19 dents); and

20 "(v) shall compare the proportion of stu21 dents at the basic, proficient, and advanced lev22 els of performance in a grade for a year with
23 the proportion of students at each of the 3 lev24 els in the same grade in the previous year.

7

1

2

3

1	"(C)(i) Adequate yearly progress for a local
2	educational agency shall be based upon both—
3	"(I) the number or percentage of schools
4	identified for school improvement or corrective
5	action; and
6	"(II) the progress of the local educational
7	agency in reducing the number or length of
8	time schools are identified for school improve-
9	ment or corrective action.
10	"(ii) The State plan shall provide that each
11	local educational agency shall ensure that, not later
12	than the end of the fourth academic year after the
13	effective date of the School Improvement Account-
14	ability Act, the percentage of schools making ade-
15	quate yearly progress among schools whose con-
16	centrations of poor children are greater than the av-
17	erage concentration of such children served by the
18	local educational agency shall not be less than the
19	percentage of schools making adequate yearly
20	progress among schools whose concentrations of poor
21	children are less than the average concentration of
22	such children served by the local educational agency.
23	"(D)(i) Adequate yearly progress for a State
24	shall be based upon both—

1	``(I) the number or percentage of local edu-
2	cational agencies identified for improvement or
3	corrective action; and
4	"(II) the progress of the State in reducing
5	the number or length of time local educational
6	agencies are identified for improvement or cor-
7	rective action.
8	"(ii) The State plan shall provide that the State
9	shall ensure that, not later than the end of the
10	fourth academic year after the effective date of the
11	School Improvement Accountability Act, the percent-
12	age of local educational agencies making adequate

I 1 1 yearly progress among local educational agencies 13 whose concentrations of poor children are greater 14 than the State average of such concentrations shall 15 16 not be less than the percentage of local educational 17 agencies making adequate yearly progress among 18 local educational agencies whose concentrations of 19 poor children are less than the State average.";

20	(3) in paragraph (3)—
21	(A) in the matter preceding subparagraph
22	(A)—
23	(i) by striking "developed or adopted"
24	and inserting "in place"; and

1	(ii) by inserting ", not later than the
2	school year 2000–2001," after "will be
3	used";
4	(B) by redesignating subparagraphs (G),
5	(H), and (I) as subparagraphs (H), (I), and
6	(J);
7	(C) in subparagraph (F)—
8	(i) in clause (ii), by striking "and"
9	after the semicolon; and
10	(ii) by adding at the end the fol-
11	lowing:
12	"(iv) the use of assessments written in
13	Spanish for the assessment of Spanish-
14	speaking students with limited English
15	proficiency, if Spanish-language assess-
16	ments are more likely than English lan-
17	guage assessments to yield accurate and
18	reliable information regarding what those
19	students know and can do in content areas
20	other than English; and
21	"(v) notwithstanding clauses (iii) and
22	(iv), the assessment (using tests written in
23	English) of reading or language arts of
24	any student who has attended school in the
25	United States (not including Puerto Rico)

	11
1	for 3 or more consecutive years, for pur-
2	poses of school accountability;";
3	(D) by inserting after subparagraph (F)
4	the following:
5	"(G) result in a report from each local
6	educational agency that indicates the number
7	and percentage of students excluded from each
8	assessment at each school, including, where sta-
9	tistically sound, data disaggregated in accord-
10	ance with subparagraph (J), except that a local
11	educational agency shall be prohibited from pro-
12	viding such information if providing the infor-
13	mation would reveal the identity of any indi-
14	vidual student."; and
15	(E) by amending subparagraph (I) (as so
16	redesignated) to read as follows:
17	"(I) provide individual student interpretive
18	and descriptive reports, which shall include
19	scores and other information on the attainment
20	of student performance standards that reflect
21	the quality of daily instruction and learning
22	such as measures of student coursework over
23	time, student attendance rates, student dropout
24	rates, and rates of student participation in ad-
25	vanced level courses; and";

1 (4) by striking paragraph (7); 2 (5) by redesignating paragraphs (4), (5), (6), 3 and (8) as paragraphs (8), (9), (10), and (11), re-4 spectively; (6) by inserting after paragraph (3) the fol-5 6 lowing: "(4) ACCOUNTABILITY.—(A) Each State plan 7 8 shall demonstrate that the State has developed and 9 is implementing a statewide accountability system 10 that is or will be effective in substantially increasing 11 the numbers and percentages of all students, includ-12 ing the lowest performing students, economically dis-13 advantaged students, and students with limited pro-14 ficiency in English, who meet the State's proficient 15 and advanced levels of performance within 10 years 16 after the date of enactment of the School Improve-17 ment Accountability Act. The State accountability 18 system shall—

"(i) be the same accountability system the
State uses for all schools or all local educational
agencies in the State, if the State has an accountability system for all schools or all local
educational agencies in the State;

24 "(ii) hold local educational agencies and25 schools accountable for student achievement in

1	at least reading and mathematics and in any
2	other subject that the State may choose; and
3	"(iii) identify schools and local educational
4	agencies for improvement or corrective action
5	based upon failure to make adequate yearly
6	progress as defined in the State plan pursuant
7	to paragraph (2).
8	"(B) The accountability system described in
9	subparagraph (A) and described in the State plan
10	shall also include a procedure for identifying for im-
11	provement a school or local educational agency, in-
12	tervening in that school or agency, and (if that
13	intervention is not effective) implementing a correc-
14	tive action not later than 3 years after first identi-
15	fying such agency or school, that—
16	"(i) complies with sections 1116 and 1117,
17	including the provision of technical assistance,
18	professional development, and other capacity-
19	building as needed, to ensure that schools and
20	local educational agencies so identified have the
21	resources, skills, and knowledge needed to carry
22	out their obligations under sections 1114 and
23	1115 and to meet the requirements for ade-
24	quate yearly progress described in paragraph
25	(2); and

•S 7 IS

1	"(ii) includes rigorous criteria for identi-
2	fying those agencies and schools based upon
3	failure to make adequate yearly progress in stu-
4	dent achievement in accordance with paragraph
5	(2).
6	"(5) PUBLIC NOTICE AND COMMENT.—Each
7	State plan shall contain assurances that—
8	"(A) in developing the State plan provi-
9	sions relating to adequate yearly progress, the
10	State diligently sought public comment from a
11	range of institutions and individuals in the
12	State with an interest in improved student
13	achievement; and
14	"(B) the State will continue to make a
15	substantial effort to ensure that information re-
16	garding this part is widely known and under-
17	stood by citizens, parents, teachers, and school
18	administrators throughout the State, and is
19	provided in a widely read or distributed me-
20	dium.
21	"(6) ANNUAL REVIEW.—The State plan shall
22	provide an assurance that the State will annually
23	submit to the Secretary information, as part of the
24	State's consolidated plan under section 14302, on
25	the extent to which schools and local educational

1 agencies are making adequate yearly progress, in-2 cluding the number and names of schools and local 3 educational agencies identified for improvement and corrective action under section 1116, the steps taken 4 5 to address the performance problems of such schools 6 and local educational agencies, and the number and 7 names of schools that are no longer so identified, for 8 purposes of determining State and local compliance 9 with section 1116.

10 "(7) PENALTIES.—(A) The State plan shall 11 provide that, if the State fails to meet the deadlines 12 described in paragraphs (1)(C) and (10) for dem-13 onstrating that the State has in place high-quality 14 State content and student performance standards 15 and aligned assessments, or if the State fails to es-16 tablish a system for measuring and monitoring ade-17 quate yearly progress, for a fiscal year, including 18 having the ability to disaggregate student achieve-19 ment data for the assessments as required under 20 this section at the State, local educational agency, 21 and school levels, then the State shall be ineligible 22 to reserve a greater amount of administrative funds 23 under section 1003 for the succeeding fiscal year 24 than the State reserved for such purposes for the

fiscal year preceding the fiscal year in which the fail ure occurred.

"(B)(i) The State plan shall provide that, ex-3 4 cept as described in clause (ii), if the State fails to 5 meet the deadlines described in paragraphs (1)(C)6 and (10) for a fiscal year, then the Secretary may 7 withhold funds made available under this part for 8 administrative expenses for the succeeding fiscal 9 year in such amount as the Secretary determines ap-10 propriate.

11 "(ii) The State plan shall provide that, if the 12 State fails to meet the deadlines described in para-13 graphs (1)(C) and (10) for the succeeding fiscal year 14 or a subsequent fiscal year, the Secretary shall with-15 hold not less than ¹/₅ of the funds made available 16 under this part for administrative expenses for the 17 fiscal year.

18 "(C) The State plan shall provide that, if the 19 State has not developed challenging State assess-20 ments that are aligned to challenging State content 21 standards in at least mathematics and reading or 22 language arts by school year 2000–2001, the State 23 shall not be eligible for designation as an Ed-Flex 24 Partnership State under the Education Flexibility 25 Partnership Act of 1999 until the State develops

1	such assessments, and the State shall be subject to
2	such other penalties as are provided in this Act for
3	failure to develop the assessments."; and
4	(7) by adding at the end the following:
5	"(12) School reports.—The State plan shall
6	provide that individual school reports publicized and
7	disseminated under section $1116(a)(2)$ shall include
8	information on the total number of students ex-
9	cluded from each assessment at each school, includ-
10	ing, where statistically sound, data disaggregated in
11	accordance with paragraph $(3)(\mathbf{J})$, and shall include
12	information on why such students were excluded
13	from the assessment. In issuing this report, a local
14	educational agency may not provide any information
15	that would violate the privacy or reveal the identity
16	of any individual student.".
17	(b) Assurances.—Section $1112(c)(1)$ (20 U.S.C.
18	6312(c)(1)) is amended—
19	(1) in subparagraph (G), by striking "; and"
20	and inserting a semicolon;
21	(2) in subparagraph (H), by striking the period
22	and inserting "; and"; and
23	(3) by adding at the end the following:
24	"(I) ensure, through incentives for vol-
25	untary transfers, the provision of professional

development, and recruitment programs, that
low-income students and minority students are
not taught at higher rates than other students
by unqualified, out-of-field, or inexperienced
teachers.".
(c) Assessment and Improvement.—Section 1116
(20 U.S.C. 6317) is amended—
(1) by amending subsection (a) to read as fol-
lows:
"(a) STATE AND LOCAL REVIEW.—
"(1) IN GENERAL.—Each local educational
agency receiving funds under this part shall use the
State assessments and other academic indicators de-
scribed in the State plan or in a State-approved local
educational agency plan to review annually the
progress of each school served under this part by the
agency to determine whether the school is making
the adequate yearly progress specified in section
1111(b)(2) toward enabling all students to meet the
State's student performance standards described in
State's student performance standards described in
the State plan.
the State plan.

"(A) publicize and disseminate in indi-1 2 vidual school reports that include statistically 3 sound results disaggregated in the same man-4 ner as results are disaggregated under section 5 1111(b)(3)(J), to teachers and other staff, par-6 ents, students, and the community, the results 7 of the annual review under paragraph (1) and 8 (if not already included in the review), gradua-9 tion rates, attendance rates, retention rates, 10 and rates of participation in advanced level 11 courses, for all schools served under this part; 12 and 13 "(B) provide the results of the annual re-14 view to schools served by the agency under this 15 part so that the schools can continually refine 16 their programs of instruction to help all stu-17 dents served under this part in those schools to 18 meet the State's student performance stand-19 ards."; 20 (2) in subsection (c)— 21 (A) by amending paragraph (1) to read as 22 follows: 23 "(1) IN GENERAL.—(A) A local educational 24 agency shall identify for school improvement any

25 school served under this part that—

1 "(i) for 2 consecutive years failed to make 2 adequate yearly progress as defined in the 3 State's plan under section 1111, except that in 4 the case of a school participating in a targeted 5 assistance program under section 1115, a local 6 educational agency may review the progress of 7 only those students in such school who are 8 served under this part; or 9 "(ii) was identified for school improvement 10 under this section on the day preceding the 11 date of enactment of the School Improvement 12 Accountability Act. "(B) The 2-year period described in subpara-

13 "(B) The 2-year period described in subpara-14 graph (A)(i) shall include any continuous period of 15 time immediately preceding the date of the enact-16 ment of such Act, during which a school did not 17 make adequate yearly progress as defined in the 18 State's plan, as such plan was in effect on the day 19 preceding the date of enactment.";

20 (B) by amending paragraph (2) to read as21 follows:

"(2) REQUIREMENTS.—(A)(i) Each school identified under paragraph (1)(A) shall promptly notify
a parent of each student enrolled in the school that
the school was identified for improvement by the

1	local educational agency and provide with the
2	notification—
3	"(I) the reasons for such identification;
4	and
5	$((\Pi)$ information about opportunities for
6	parents to participate in the school improve-
7	ment process.
8	"(ii) The notification under this subparagraph
9	shall be in a format and, to the extent practicable,
10	in a language, that the parents can understand.
11	"(B)(i) Before identifying a school for school
12	improvement under paragraph $(1)(A)$, the local edu-
13	cational agency shall inform the school that the
14	agency proposes to identify the school for school im-
15	provement and provide the school with an oppor-
16	tunity to review the school-level data, including as-
17	sessment data, upon which the proposed determina-
18	tion regarding identification is based.
19	"(ii) If the school believes that the proposed
20	identification is in error for statistical or other sub-
21	stantive reasons, the school may provide supporting
22	evidence to the local educational agency during the
23	review period, and the agency shall consider such
24	evidence before making a final determination regard-

25 ing identification.

1	"(iii) The review period under this subpara-
2	graph shall not exceed 30 days. At the end of the
3	period, the agency shall make public a final deter-
4	mination regarding indentification of the school.
5	"(C) Each school identified under paragraph
6	(1)(A) shall, within 3 months after being so identi-
7	fied, and in consultation with parents, the local edu-
8	cational agency, and the school support team or
9	other outside experts, develop or revise a school plan
10	that—
11	"(i) addresses the fundamental teaching
12	and learning needs in the school;
13	"(ii) describes the specific achievement
14	problems to be solved;
15	"(iii) includes the strategies, supported by
16	valid and reliable evidence of effectiveness, with
17	specific goals and objectives, that have the
18	greatest likelihood of improving the perform-
19	ance of participating students in meeting the
20	State's student performance standards;
21	"(iv) explains how those strategies will
22	work to address the achievement problems iden-
23	tified under clause (ii), including providing a
24	summary of evaluation-based evidence of stu-

1	dent achievement after implementation of those
2	strategies in other schools;
3	"(v) addresses the need for high-quality
4	staff by ensuring that all new teachers in the
5	school in programs supported with funds pro-
6	vided under this part are fully qualified;
7	"(vi) addresses the professional develop-
8	ment needs of the instructional staff of the
9	school by describing a plan for spending a min-
10	imum of 10 percent of the funds received by the
11	school under this part on professional develop-
12	ment that—
13	"(I) does not supplant professional
14	development services that the instructional
15	staff would otherwise receive; and
16	"(II) is designed to increase the con-
17	tent knowledge of teachers, build teachers'
18	capacity to align classroom instruction
19	with challenging content standards, and
20	bring all students in the school to pro-
21	ficient or advanced levels of performance;
22	"(vii) identifies specific goals and objec-
23	tives the school will undertake for making ade-
24	quate yearly progress, including specific numer-
25	ical performance goals and targets that are

high enough to ensure that all groups of students specified in section 1111(b)(2)(B)(iv) meet or exceed the proficient levels of performance in each subject area within 10 years after the date of enactment of the School Improvement Accountability Act; and

7 "(viii) specifies the responsibilities of the 8 school and the local educational agency, includ-9 ing how the local educational agency will hold 10 the school accountable for, and assist the school 11 in, meeting the school's obligations to provide 12 enriched and accelerated curricula, effective in-13 structional methods, highly qualified profes-14 sional development, and timely and effective in-15 dividual assistance, in partnership with parents.

"(D)(i) The school shall submit the plan (including a revised plan) to the local educational agency for approval.

"(ii) The local educational agency shall promptly subject the plan to a peer review process, work
with the school to revise the plan as necessary, and
approve the plan.

23 "(iii) The school shall implement the plan as24 soon as the plan is approved.";

1

2

3

4

5

1	(C) by amending paragraph (4) to read as
2	follows:
3	"(4) TECHNICAL ASSISTANCE.—(A) For each
4	school identified for school improvement under para-
5	graph (1)(A), the local educational agency shall pro-
6	vide technical assistance as the school develops and
7	implements the school's plan.
8	"(B) Such technical assistance—
9	"(i) shall include information on effective
10	methods and instructional strategies that are
11	supported by valid and reliable evidence of ef-
12	fectiveness;
13	"(ii) shall be designed to strengthen the
14	core academic program for the students served
15	under this part, address specific elements of
16	student performance problems, and address
17	problems, if any, in implementing the parental
18	involvement requirements in section 1118, im-
19	plementing the professional development provi-
20	sions in section 1119, and carrying out the re-
21	sponsibilities of the school and local educational
22	agency under the plan; and
23	"(iii) may be provided directly by the local
24	educational agency, through mechanisms au-
25	thorized under section 1117, or (with the local

1	educational agency's approval) by an institution
2	of higher education whose teacher preparation
3	program is not identified as low performing by
4	its State and that is in full compliance with the
5	requirements of section 207 of the Higher Edu-
6	cation Act of 1965, a private nonprofit organi-
7	zation, an educational service agency, a com-
8	prehensive regional assistance center under part
9	A of title XIII, or other entities with experience
10	in helping schools improve achievement.
11	"(C) Technical assistance provided under this
12	section by the local educational agency or an entity
13	approved by such agency shall be supported by valid
14	and reliable evidence of effectiveness.";
15	(D) by amending paragraph (5) to read as
16	follows:
17	"(5) CORRECTIVE ACTION.—In order to help
18	students served under this part meet challenging
19	State standards, each local educational agency shall
20	implement a system of corrective action in accord-
21	ance with the following:
22	"(A) In this paragraph, the term 'correc-
23	tive action' means action, consistent with State
24	and local law, that—

1	"(i) substantially and directly re-
2	sponds to the consistent academic failure
3	that caused the local educational agency to
4	take such action and to any underlying
5	staffing, curricular, or other problems in
6	the school involved; and
7	"(ii) is designed to substantially in-
8	crease the likelihood that students will per-
9	form at the proficient and advanced per-
10	formance levels.
11	"(B) After providing technical assistance
12	under paragraph (4), the local educational
13	agency—
14	"(i) may take corrective action at any
15	time with respect to a school that has been
16	identified under paragraph (1)(A);
17	"(ii) shall take corrective action with
18	respect to any school that fails to make
19	adequate yearly progress, as defined by the
20	State, for 2 consecutive years following the
21	school's identification under paragraph
22	(1)(A), at the end of the second year; and
23	"(iii) shall continue to provide tech-
24	nical assistance while instituting any cor-
25	rective action under clause (i) or (ii).

1	"(C) In the case of a school described in
2	subparagraph (B)(ii), the local educational
3	agency—
4	"(i) shall take corrective action that
5	changes the school's administration or gov-
6	ernance by—
7	"(I) instituting and fully imple-
8	menting a new curriculum, including
9	providing appropriate professional de-
10	velopment for all relevant staff, that
11	is supported by valid and reliable evi-
12	dence of effectiveness and offers sub-
13	stantial promise of improving edu-
14	cational achievement for low-per-
15	forming students;
16	"(II) restructuring the school,
17	such as by creating schools within
18	schools or other small learning envi-
19	ronments, or making alternative gov-
20	ernance arrangements (such as the
21	creation of a public charter school);
22	"(III) redesigning the school by
23	reconstituting all or part of the school
24	staff;

- "(IV) eliminating the use noncredentialed teachers; or "(V) closing the school; "(ii) shall provide professional development for all relevant staff, that is supported by valid and reliable evidence of effectiveness and that offers substantial promise of improving student educational achievement and is directly related to the content area in which each teacher is providing instruction and the State's content
- 12 and performance standards in that content 13 area; and
- 14 "(iii) may defer, reduce, or withhold 15 funds provided to carry out this title.
- "(D)(i) When a local educational agency 16 17 has identified a school for corrective action 18 under subparagraph (B)(ii), the agency shall 19 provide all students enrolled in the school with 20 the option to transfer to another public school 21 that is within the area served by the local edu-22 cational agency that has not been identified for 23 school improvement and provide such students 24 with transportation (or the costs of transpor-

29

of

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

1	tation) to such school, subject to the following
2	requirements:
3	"(I) Such transfer must be consistent
4	with State or local law.
5	"(II) If the local educational agency
6	cannot accommodate the request of every
7	student from the identified school, the
8	agency shall permit as many students as
9	possible to transfer, with such students
10	being selected at random on a nondiscrim-
11	inatory and equitable basis.
12	"(III) The local educational agency
13	may use not more than 10 percent of the
14	funds the local educational agency receives
15	through the State reservation under sec-
16	tion $1003(a)(2)$ to provide transportation
17	to students whose parents choose to trans-
18	fer the students to a different school under
19	this subparagraph.
20	"(ii) If all public schools served by the
21	local educational agency are identified for cor-
22	rective action, the agency shall, to the extent
23	practicable, establish a cooperative agreement
24	with another local educational agency in the
25	area to enable students served by the agency to

transfer to a school served by that other agency.

3 "(E) A local educational agency may delay, 4 for a period not to exceed 1 year, implementa-5 tion of corrective action if the failure to make 6 adequate yearly progress was justified due to 7 exceptional or uncontrollable circumstances 8 such as a natural disaster or a precipitous and 9 unforeseen decline in the financial resources of 10 the local educational agency or school.

11 "(F) The local educational agency shall 12 publish and disseminate to parents and the 13 public in a format and, to the extent prac-14 ticable, in a language the parents and the pub-15 lic can understand, through such means as the 16 Internet, the media, and public agencies, infor-17 mation on any corrective action the agency 18 takes under this paragraph.

19 "(G)(i) Before taking corrective action 20 with respect to any school under this para-21 graph, the local educational agency shall inform 22 the school that the agency proposes to take cor-23 rective action and provide the school with an 24 opportunity to review the school-level data, in-25 cluding assessment data, upon which the pro-

31

1

posed determination regarding corrective action is based.

"(ii) If the school believes that the proposed determination is in error for statistical or other substantive reasons, the school may provide supporting evidence to the local educational agency during the review period, and the agency shall consider such evidence before making a final determination regarding corrective action.

"(iii) The review period under this subparagraph shall not exceed 45 days. At the end
of the period, the local educational agency shall
make public a final determination regarding
corrective action for the school.";

15 (E) by amending paragraph (6) to read as16 follows:

17 "(6) STATE EDUCATIONAL AGENCY RESPON-18 SIBILITIES.—If a State educational agency deter-19 mines that a local educational agency failed to carry 20 out its responsibilities under this section, the State 21 educational agency shall take such action as the 22 agency finds necessary, consistent with this section, 23 to improve the affected schools and to ensure that 24 the local educational agency carries out its respon-25 sibilities under this section."; and

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

(F) by amending paragraph (7) to read as
 follows:

3 "(7) WAIVERS.—The State educational agency 4 shall review any waivers that have previously been 5 approved for a school identified for improvement or 6 corrective action, and shall terminate any waiver ap-7 proved by the State, under the Educational Flexi-8 bility Partnership Act of 1999, if the State deter-9 mines, after notice and an opportunity for a hearing, 10 that the waiver is not helping such school make ade-11 quate yearly progress toward meeting the goals, ob-12 jectives, and performance targets in the school's im-13 provement plan."; and

14 (3) by amending subsection (d) to read as fol-15 lows:

16 "(d) STATE REVIEW AND LOCAL EDUCATIONAL17 AGENCY IMPROVEMENT.—

"(1) IN GENERAL.—A State educational agency
shall annually review the progress of each local educational agency receiving funds under this part to
determine whether schools receiving assistance under
this part are making adequate yearly progress as defined in section 1111(b)(2) toward meeting the
State's student performance standards.

1	"(2) Identification of local educational
2	AGENCY FOR IMPROVEMENT.—A State educational
3	agency shall identify for improvement any local edu-
4	cational agency that—
5	"(A) for 2 consecutive years failed to make
6	adequate yearly progress as defined in the
7	State's plan under section 1111(b)(2); or
8	"(B) was identified for improvement under
9	this section as this section was in effect on the
10	day preceding the date of enactment of the
11	School Improvement Accountability Act.
12	"(3) TRANSITION.—The 2-year period described
13	in paragraph (2)(A) shall include any continuous pe-
14	riod of time immediately preceding the date of en-
15	actment of such Act, during which a local edu-
16	cational agency did not make adequate yearly
17	progress as defined in the State's plan, as such plan
18	was in effect on the day preceding the date of enact-
19	ment.
20	"(4) TARGETED ASSISTANCE SCHOOLS.—For
21	purposes of reviewing the progress of targeted as-
\mathbf{r}	gistance schools sowed by a local educational account

sistance schools served by a local educational agency,
a State educational agency may choose to review the
progress of only the students in such schools who
are served under this part.

1 "(5) Opportunity to review and present 2 EVIDENCE.—(A) Before identifying a local edu-3 cational agency for improvement under paragraph 4 (2), a State educational agency shall inform the local 5 educational agency that the State educational agency 6 proposes to identify the local educational agency for 7 improvement and provide the local educational agency with an opportunity to review the local edu-8 9 cational agency data, including assessment data, 10 upon which the proposed determination regarding identification is based. 11

12 "(B) If the local educational agency believes 13 that the proposed identification is in error for statis-14 tical or other substantive reasons, the agency may 15 provide supporting evidence to the State educational 16 agency during the review period, and the agency 17 shall consider such evidence before making a final 18 determination regarding identification.

"(C) The review period under this paragraph
shall not exceed 30 days. At the end of the period,
the State shall make public a final determination regarding identification of the local educational agency.

24 "(6) NOTIFICATION TO PARENTS.—(A) The25 local educational agency shall promptly notify a par-

1	ent of each student enrolled in a school served by a
2	local educational agency identified for improvement
3	that the agency was identified for improvement and
4	provide with the notification—
5	(i) the reasons for the agency's identi-
6	fication; and
7	(ii) information about opportunities
8	for parents to participate in upgrading the
9	quality of the local educational agency.
10	"(B) The notification under this paragraph
11	shall be in a format and, to the extent practicable,
12	in a language, that the parents can understand.
13	"(7) LOCAL EDUCATIONAL AGENCY REVI-
14	SIONS.—(A) Each local educational agency identified
15	under paragraph (2) shall, not later than 3 months
16	after being so identified, develop or revise a local
17	educational agency plan and annual academic
18	achievement goals, in consultation with parents,
19	school staff, and others.
20	"(B) ACHIEVEMENT GOALS.—The annual aca-
21	demic achievement goals shall be sufficiently high to
22	ensure that all students within the jurisdiction in-
23	volved, including the lowest performing students,
24	economically disadvantaged students, students of dif-
25	ferent races and ethnicities, and students with lim-
1	ited English proficiency will meet or exceed the pro-
----	---
2	ficient level of performance on the assessments re-
3	quired by section 1111 within 10 years after the
4	date of enactment of the School Improvement Ac-
5	countability Act.
6	"(C) The plan shall—
7	"(i) address the fundamental teaching and
8	learning needs in the schools served by that
9	agency, and the specific academic problems of
10	low-performing students, including stating a de-
11	termination of why the local educational agen-
12	cy's prior plan, if any, failed to bring about in-
13	creased achievement;
14	"(ii) incorporate strategies that are sup-
15	ported by valid and reliable evidence of effec-
16	tiveness and that strengthen the core academic
17	program in the local educational agency;
18	"(iii) identify specific annual academic
19	achievement goals and objectives that will—
20	"(I) have the greatest likelihood of
21	improving the performance of participating
22	students in meeting the State's student
23	performance standards; and
24	"(II) include specific numerical per-
25	formance goals and targets for each of the

1	groups of students for which data are
2	disaggregated pursuant to section
3	1111(b)(2)(B)(iv);
4	"(iv) address the professional development
5	needs of the instructional staff of the schools by
6	describing a plan for spending a minimum of
7	10 percent of the funds received by the schools
8	under this part on professional development
9	that—
10	"(I) does not supplant professional
11	development services that the instructional
12	staff would otherwise receive; and
13	"(II) is designed to increase the con-
14	tent knowledge of teachers, build teachers'
15	capacity to align classroom instruction
16	with challenging content standards, and
17	bring all students in the schools to pro-
18	ficient or advanced levels of performance;
19	"(v) identify measures the local edu-
20	cational agency will undertake to make ade-
21	quate yearly progress;
22	"(vi) identify how, pursuant to paragraph
23	(6), the local educational agency will provide
24	written notification to parents in a format and,

1	to the extent practicable, in a language the par-
2	ents can understand;
3	"(vii) specify the responsibilities of the
4	State educational agency and the local edu-
5	cational agency under the plan; and
6	"(viii) include strategies to promote effec-
7	tive parental involvement in the schools.
8	"(D) The local educational agency shall submit
9	the plan (including a revised plan) to the State edu-
10	cational agency for approval. The State educational
11	agency shall, within 60 days after submission of the
12	plan, subject the plan to a peer review process, work
13	with the local educational agency to revise the plan
14	as necessary, and approve the plan.
15	"(E) The local educational agency shall imple-
16	ment the plan (including a revised plan) as soon as
17	the plan is approved.
18	"(8) STATE EDUCATIONAL AGENCY RESPONSI-
19	BILITY.—(A) For each local educational agency
20	identified under paragraph (2), the State edu-
21	cational agency (or an entity authorized by the agen-
22	cy) shall provide technical or other assistance, if re-
23	quested, as authorized under section 1117, to better
24	enable the local educational agency—

1	"(i) to develop and implement the local
2	educational agency plan as approved by the
3	State educational agency consistent with the re-
4	quirements of this section; and
5	"(ii) to work with schools identified for im-
6	provement.
7	"(B) Technical assistance provided under this
8	section by the State educational agency or an entity
9	authorized by the agency shall be supported by valid
10	and reliable evidence of effectiveness.
11	"(9) CORRECTIVE ACTION.—In order to help
12	students served under this part meet challenging
13	State standards, each State educational agency shall
14	implement a system of corrective action in accord-
15	ance with the following:
16	"(A) In this paragraph, the term 'correc-
17	tive action' means action, consistent with State
18	law, that—
19	"(i) substantially and directly re-
20	sponds to the consistent academic failure
21	that caused the State educational agency
22	to take such action and to any underlying
23	staffing, curricular, or other problems in
24	the schools involved; and

1	"(ii) is designed to substantially in-
2	crease the likelihood that students served
3	under this part will perform at the pro-
4	ficient and advanced performance levels.
5	"(B) After providing technical assistance
6	under paragraph (8) and subject to subpara-
7	graph (D), the State educational agency—
8	"(i) may take corrective action at any
9	time with respect to a local educational
10	agency that has been identified under
11	paragraph (2);
12	"(ii) shall take corrective action with
13	respect to any local educational agency
14	that fails to make adequate yearly
15	progress, as defined by the State, for 3
16	consecutive years following the agency's
17	identification under paragraph (2) , at the
18	end of the third year; and
19	"(iii) shall continue to provide tech-
20	nical assistance while instituting any cor-
21	rective action under clause (i) or (ii).
22	"(C) In the case of a local educational
23	agency described in subparagraph (B)(ii), the
24	State educational agency shall take at least 1 of
25	the following corrective actions:

	1-
1	"(i) Withholding funds from the local
2	educational agency.
3	"(ii) Reconstituting school district
4	personnel.
5	"(iii) Removing particular schools
6	from the jurisdiction of the local edu-
7	cational agency and establishing alter-
8	native arrangements for public governance
9	and supervision of the schools.
10	"(iv) Appointing, through the State
11	educational agency, a receiver or trustee to
12	administer the affairs of the local edu-
13	cational agency in place of the super-
14	intendent and school board.
15	"(v) Abolishing or restructuring the
16	local educational agency.
17	"(D) When a State educational agency has
18	identified a local educational agency for correc-
19	tive action under subparagraph (B)(ii), the
20	State educational agency shall provide all stu-
21	dents enrolled in a school served by the local
22	educational agency with a plan to transfer to a
23	higher performing public school served by an-
24	other local educational agency and shall provide
25	such students with transportation (or the costs

1	of transportation) to such schools, subject to
2	the following requirements:
3	"(i) The provision of the transfer shall
4	be done in conjunction with at least 1 ad-
5	ditional action described in this paragraph.
6	"(ii) If the State educational agency
7	cannot accommodate the request of every
8	student from the schools served by the
9	agency, the agency shall permit as many
10	students as possible to transfer, with such
11	students being selected at random on a
12	nondiscriminatory and equitable basis.
13	"(iii) The State educational agency
14	may use not more than 10 percent of the
15	funds the agency receives through the
16	State reservation under section $1003(a)(2)$
17	to provide transportation to students
18	whose parents choose to transfer their
19	child to a different school under this sub-
20	paragraph.
21	"(E) Prior to implementing any corrective
22	action under this paragraph, the State edu-
23	cational agency shall provide due process and a
24	hearing to the affected local educational agency,

if State law provides for such process and hear-

ing. The hearing shall take place not later than 45 days following the decision to implement the corrective action.

"(F) The State educational agency shall 4 5 publish and disseminate to parents and the 6 public in a format and, to the extent prac-7 ticable, in a language the parents and the pub-8 lic can understand, through such means as the 9 Internet, the media, and public agencies, infor-10 mation on any corrective action the agency 11 takes under this paragraph.

"(G) A State educational agency may 12 13 delay, for a period not to exceed 1 year, imple-14 mentation of corrective action if the failure to 15 make adequate yearly progress was justified 16 due exceptional or uncontrollable to cir-17 cumstances such as a natural disaster or a pre-18 cipitous and unforeseen decline in the financial 19 resources of the local educational agency.

"(10) WAIVERS.—The State educational agency
shall review any waivers that have previously been
approved for a local educational agency identified for
improvement or corrective action, and shall terminate any waiver approved by the State, under the
Educational Flexibility Partnership Act of 1999, if

1

2

the State determines, after notice and an oppor tunity for a hearing, that the waiver is not helping
 such agency make adequate yearly progress toward
 meeting the goals, objectives, and performance tar gets in the agency's improvement plan.".

6 (d) STATE ASSISTANCE FOR SCHOOL SUPPORT AND
7 IMPROVEMENT.—Section 1117(a) (20 U.S.C. 6318(a)) is
8 amended to read as follows:

9 "(a) System for Support.—

"(1) IN GENERAL.—Each State educational 10 11 agency shall establish a statewide system of inten-12 sive and sustained support and improvement for 13 local educational agencies and schools receiving 14 funds under this part, in order to increase the op-15 portunity for all students served by those agencies 16 and schools to meet the State's content standards 17 and student performance standards.

18 "(2) PRIORITIES.—In carrying out this section,
19 a State educational agency shall—

20 "(A) provide support and assistance to
21 local educational agencies and schools identified
22 for corrective action under section 1116;

23 "(B) provide support and assistance to24 other local educational agencies and schools

1 identified for improvement under section 1116; 2 and 3 "(C) provide support and assistance to 4 each school receiving funds under this part in 5 which the number of students in poverty equals 6 or exceeds 75 percent of the total number of 7 students enrolled in such school. "(3) APPROACHES.—In order to achieve the ob-8 9 jectives of this subsection, each statewide system 10 provide technical assistance and support shall 11 through approaches such as— "(A) use of school support teams, com-12 13 posed of individuals who are knowledgeable 14 about research on and practice of teaching and 15 learning, particularly about strategies for im-16 proving educational results for low-achieving 17 students; 18 "(B) the designation and use of Distin-19 guished Educators', chosen from schools served 20 under this part that have been especially suc-21 cessful in improving academic achievement; 22 "(C) assisting local educational agencies or 23 schools to implement research-based com-

prehensive school reform models; and

1	"(D) use of a peer review process designed
2	to increase the capacity of local educational
3	agencies and schools to develop high-quality
4	school improvement plans.
5	"(4) FUNDS.—Each State educational agency—
6	"(A) shall use funds reserved under section
7	1003(a)(1), but not used under section
8	1003(a)(2) and funds appropriated under sec-
9	tion 1002(f) to carry out this section; and
10	"(B) may use State administrative funds
11	authorized for such purpose.
12	"(5) Alternatives.—The State educational
13	agency may devise additional approaches to pro-
14	viding the assistance described in subparagraphs (A)
15	and (B) of paragraph (3), other than the provision
16	of assistance under the statewide system, such as
17	providing assistance through institutions of higher
18	education, educational service agencies, or other
19	local consortia. The State educational agency may
20	seek approval from the Secretary to use funds made
21	available under section 1003 for such approaches as
22	part of the State plan.".
23	(e) Conforming Amendments.—The 1965 (20

24 U.S.C. 6301 et seq.) is amended—

1	(1) in section $1111(b)(1)(C)$ (20 U.S.C.
2	6311(b)(1)(C)), by striking "paragraph (6)" and in-
3	serting "paragraph (10)";
4	(2) in section $1112(c)(1)(D)$ (20 U.S.C.
5	6312(c)(1)(D)), by striking "section $1116(c)(4)$ "
6	and inserting "section 1116(c)(5)";
7	(3) in section $1117(c)(2)(A)$ (20 U.S.C.
8	6318(c)(2)(A)), by striking "section
9	1111(b)(2)(A)(i)" and inserting "section
10	1111(b)(2)(A)";
11	(4) in section $1118(c)(4)(B)$ (20 U.S.C.
12	6319(c)(4)(B)), by striking "school performance
13	profiles required under section $1116(a)(3)$ " and in-
14	serting "individual school reports required under
15	section 1116(a)(2)(A)";
16	(5) in section $1118(e)(1)$ (20 U.S.C.
17	6319(e)(1)), by striking "section $1111(b)(8)$ " and
18	inserting "section 1111(b)(11)"; and
19	(6) in section $1119(h)(3)$ (20 U.S.C.
20	6320(h)(3)), by striking "section $1116(d)(6)$ " and
21	inserting "section 1116(d)(9)".
22	SEC. 103. COMPREHENSIVE SCHOOL REFORM.
23	Title I (20 U.S.C. 6301 et seq.) is amended—
24	(1) by redesignating part F as part G; and
25	(2) by inserting after part E the following:

"PART F—COMPREHENSIVE SCHOOL REFORM "SEC. 1551. PURPOSE.

3 "The purpose of this part is to provide financial in-4 centives for schools to develop comprehensive school re-5 forms based upon promising and effective practices and 6 research-based programs that emphasize basic academics 7 and parental involvement so that all children can meet 8 challenging State content and student performance stand-9 ards.

10 "SEC. 1552. PROGRAM AUTHORIZATION.

11 "(a) Program Authorized.—

12 "(1) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary may award 13 grants to State educational agencies, from allot-14 ments under paragraph (2), to enable the State edu-15 cational agencies to award subgrants to local edu-16 cational agencies to carry out the purpose described 17 in section 1551.

18 "(2) Allotments.—

19 "(A) RESERVATIONS.—Of the amount ap20 propriated under section 1558 for a fiscal year,
21 the Secretary may reserve—

"(i) not more than 1 percent to provide assistance to schools supported by the
Bureau of Indian Affairs and in the
United States Virgin Islands, Guam,
American Samoa, and the Commonwealth

1	of the Northern Mariana Islands according
2	to their respective needs for assistance
3	under this part; and
4	"(ii) not more than 1 percent to con-
5	duct national evaluation activities de-
6	scribed in section 1557.
7	"(B) IN GENERAL.—Of the amount appro-
8	priated under section 1558 that remains after
9	making the reservation under subparagraph (A)
10	for a fiscal year, the Secretary shall allot to
11	each State for the fiscal year an amount that
12	bears the same ratio to the remainder for that
13	fiscal year as the amount made available under
14	section 1124 to the State for the preceding fis-
15	cal year bears to the total amount made avail-
16	able under section 1124 to all States for the
17	preceding fiscal year.
18	"(C) REALLOTMENT.—If a State does not
19	apply for funds under this part, the Secretary
20	shall reallot such funds to other States in pro-
21	portion to the amount allotted to such other
22	States under subparagraph (B).
23	"SEC. 1553. STATE APPLICATIONS.

24 "(a) IN GENERAL.—Each State educational agency25 that desires to receive a grant under this part shall submit

an application to the Secretary at such time, in such man ner, and containing such information as the Secretary may
 reasonably require.

4 "(b) CONTENTS.—Each such application shall 5 describe—

6 "(1) the process and selection criteria by which
7 the State educational agency, using expert review,
8 will select local educational agencies to receive sub9 grants under this part;

10 "(2) how the State educational agency will en-11 sure that only comprehensive school reforms that are 12 based upon promising and effective practices and re-13 search-based programs receive funds under this part; 14 "(3) how the State educational agency will dis-15 seminate information on comprehensive school re-16 forms that are based upon promising and effective 17 practices and research-based programs;

18 "(4) how the State educational agency will
19 evaluate the implementation of such reforms and
20 measure the extent to which the reforms have re21 sulted in increased student academic performance;
22 and

23 "(5) how the State educational agency will
24 make available technical assistance to a local edu-

1	cational agency in evaluating, developing, and imple-
2	menting comprehensive school reform.
3	"SEC. 1554. STATE USE OF FUNDS.
4	"(a) IN GENERAL.—Except as provided in subsection
5	(e), a State educational agency that receives a grant under
6	this part shall use the grant funds to award subgrants,
7	on a competitive basis, to local educational agencies (in-
8	cluding consortia of local educational agencies) in the
9	State that receive funds under part A.
10	"(b) Subgrant Requirements.—A subgrant to a

11 local educational agency shall be—

12 "(1) of sufficient size and scope to support the 13 initial costs for the particular comprehensive school 14 reform plan selected or designed by each school iden-15 tified in the application of the local educational 16 agency;

17 "(2) in an amount not less than \$50,000 for18 each participating school; and

"(3) renewable for 2 additional 1-year periods
after the initial 1-year grant is made, if the participating school is making substantial progress in the
implementation of reforms.

23 "(c) PRIORITY.—A State educational agency, in
24 awarding subgrants under this part, shall give priority to
25 local educational agencies that—

"(1) plan to use the funds in schools identified
 for improvement or corrective action under section
 1116(c); and

4 "(2) demonstrate a commitment to assist
5 schools with budget allocation, professional develop6 ment, and other strategies necessary to ensure that
7 comprehensive school reforms are properly imple8 mented and are sustained in the future.

9 "(d) GRANT CONSIDERATION.—In awarding sub-10 grants under this part, the State educational agency shall 11 take into consideration the equitable distribution of sub-12 grants to different geographic regions within the State, 13 including urban and rural areas, and to schools serving 14 elementary school and secondary school students.

15 "(e) ADMINISTRATIVE COSTS.—A State educational
16 agency that receives a grant under this part may reserve
17 not more than 5 percent of the grant funds for administra18 tive, evaluation, and technical assistance expenses.

19 "(f) SUPPLEMENT.—Funds made available under
20 this part shall be used to supplement, and not supplant,
21 any other Federal, State, or local funds that would other22 wise be available to carry out the activities assisted under
23 this part.

24 "(g) REPORTING.—Each State educational agency25 that receives a grant under this part shall provide to the

Secretary such information as the Secretary may require,
 including the names of local educational agencies and
 schools receiving assistance under this part, the amount
 of the assistance, and a description of the comprehensive
 school reform model selected and used.

6 "SEC. 1555. LOCAL APPLICATIONS.

7 "(a) IN GENERAL.—Each local educational agency
8 desiring a subgrant under this part shall submit an appli9 cation to the State educational agency at such time, in
10 such manner, and containing such information as the
11 State educational agency may reasonably require.

12 "(b) CONTENTS.—Each such application shall—

"(1) identify the schools, that are eligible for
assistance under part A, that plan to implement a
comprehensive school reform program and include
the projected costs of such program;

17 "(2) describe the promising and effective prac18 tices and research-based programs that such schools
19 will implement;

"(3) describe how the local educational agency
will provide technical assistance and support for the
effective implementation of the promising and effective practices and research-based school reforms selected by such schools; and

"(4) describe how the local educational agency
 will evaluate the implementation of such reforms and
 measure the results achieved in improving student
 academic performance.

5 "SEC. 1556. LOCAL USE OF FUNDS.

6 "(a) USE OF FUNDS.—A local educational agency 7 that receives a subgrant under this part shall provide the 8 subgrant funds to schools, that are eligible for assistance 9 under part A and served by the agency, to enable the 10 schools to implement a comprehensive school reform pro-11 gram for—

"(1) employing innovative strategies for student
learning, teaching, and school management that are
based upon promising and effective practices and research-based programs and have been replicated successfully in schools with diverse characteristics;

"(2) integrating a comprehensive design for ef-17 18 fective school functioning, including instruction, as-19 sessment, classroom management, professional devel-20 opment, parental involvement, and school manage-21 ment, that aligns the school's curriculum, tech-22 nology, and professional development into a com-23 prehensive reform plan for schoolwide change de-24 signed to enable all students to meet challenging 25 State content and student performance standards

	50
1	and addresses needs identified through a school
2	needs assessment;
3	"(3) providing high quality and continuous
4	teacher and staff professional development;
5	"(4) including measurable goals for student
б	performance;
7	"(5) providing support to teachers, principals,
8	administrators, and other school personnel staff;
9	"(6) including meaningful community and pa-
10	rental involvement initiatives that will strengthen
11	school improvement activities;
12	"(7) using high quality external technical sup-
13	port and assistance from an entity that has experi-
14	ence and expertise in schoolwide reform and im-
15	provement, which may include an institution of high-
16	er education;
17	"(8) evaluating school reform implementation
18	and student performance; and
19	"(9) identifying other resources, including Fed-
20	eral, State, local, and private resources, that will be
21	used to coordinate services supporting and sus-
22	taining the school reform effort.
23	"(b) Special Rule.—A school that receives funds
24	to develop a comprehensive school reform program shall
25	not be limited to using the approaches identified or devel-

oped by the Secretary, but may develop the school's own
 comprehensive school reform programs for schoolwide
 change as described in subsection (a).

4 "SEC. 1557. NATIONAL EVALUATION AND REPORTS.

5 "(a) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary shall develop a
6 plan for a national evaluation of the programs assisted
7 under this part.

8 "(b) EVALUATION.—The national evaluation shall—
9 "(1) evaluate the implementation and results
10 achieved by schools after 3 years of implementing
11 comprehensive school reforms; and

12 "(2) assess the effectiveness of comprehensive
13 school reforms in schools with diverse characteris14 tics.

15 "(c) REPORTS.—Prior to the completion of the national evaluation, the Secretary shall submit an interim 16 report describing implementation activities for the Com-17 prehensive School Reform Program to the Committee on 18 19 Education and the Workforce, and the Committee on Appropriations, of the House of Representatives, and the 20 21 Committee on Health, Education, Labor, and Pensions, 22 and the Committee on Appropriations, of the Senate.

23 "SEC. 1558. AUTHORIZATION OF APPROPRIATIONS.

24 "There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out25 this part \$500,000,000 for fiscal year 2002 and such sums

1 as may be necessary for each of the 4 succeeding fiscal2 years.".

58

3 Subtitle B—Teachers

4 SEC. 121. STATE APPLICATIONS.

5 (a) CONTENTS OF STATE PLAN.—Section 2205(b)(2)
6 (20 U.S.C. 6645(b)(2)) is amended—

7 (1) by amending subparagraph (N) to read as8 follows:

9 "(N) set specific annual, quantifiable, and measurable performance goals to increase the 10 11 percentage of teachers participating in sus-12 tained professional development activities, re-13 duce the beginning teacher attrition rate, and 14 reduce the percentage of teachers who are not 15 certified or licensed, and the percentage who 16 are out-of-field teachers;";

17 (2) by redesignating subparagraph (O) as sub-18 paragraph (P); and

19 (3) by inserting after subparagraph (N) the fol-20 lowing:

21 "(O) describe how the State will ensure
22 that all teachers in the State will be fully quali23 fied not later than December 1, 2005; and".
24 (b) Structure to be Locate Astronomy Point D of title

24 (b) STATE AND LOCAL ACTIVITIES.—Part B of title
25 II (20 U.S.C. 6641 et seq.) is amended—

(1) by redesignating section 2211 as section
 2215;

3 (2) by inserting after section 2210 the fol-4 lowing:

5 "SEC. 2211. LOCAL CONTINUATION OF FUNDING.

6 "(a) AGENCIES.—If a local educational agency ap-7 plies for funds from a State under this part for a fourth 8 or subsequent fiscal year, the agency may not receive the 9 funds for that fiscal year unless the State determines that 10 the agency has demonstrated that, in carrying out activi-11 ties under this part during the past fiscal year, the agency has annual numerical performance objectives consisting 12 13 of—

- 14 "(1) improved student performance for all15 groups identified in section 1111;
- 16 "(2) an increased percentage of teachers par17 ticipating in sustained professional development ac18 tivities;
- 19 "(3) a reduction in the beginning teacher attri-20 tion rate for the agency; and
- 21 "(4) a reduction in the percentage of teachers
 22 who are not certified or licensed, and the percentage
 23 who are out-of-field teachers, for the agency.

24 "(b) SCHOOLS.—If a local educational agency applies25 for funds under this part on behalf of a school for a fourth

or subsequent fiscal year (including applying for funds as
 part of a partnership), the agency may not receive the
 funds for the school for that fiscal year unless the State
 determines that the school has demonstrated that, in car rying out activities under this part during the past fiscal
 year, the school has met the requirements of paragraphs
 (1) through (4) of subsection (a).

8 "SEC. 2212. INFORMATION AND NOTICE TO PARENTS.

9 "(a) PARENTS' RIGHT TO KNOW INFORMATION.—

"(1) IN GENERAL.—A local educational agency
that receives funds under this title shall provide, on
request, in an understandable and uniform format,
to any parent of a student attending any school
served by the agency, information regarding the professional qualifications of each of the student's classroom teachers.

17 "(2) CONTENTS.—The agency shall provide, at18 a minimum, information on—

"(A) whether the teacher has met State
certification or licensing criteria for the academic subjects and grade levels in which the
teacher teaches the student;

23 "(B) whether the teacher is teaching with
24 emergency or other provisional credentials, due

1	to which any State certification or licensing cri-
2	teria have been waived; and
3	"(C) the academic qualifications of the
4	teacher in the academic subjects and grade lev-
5	els in which the teacher teaches.
6	"(b) NOTICE.—In addition to providing the informa-
7	tion described in subsection (a), if a school that receives
8	funds under this title assigns a student to a teacher who
9	is not a fully qualified teacher or assigns a student, for
10	2 or more consecutive weeks, to a substitute teacher who
11	is not a fully qualified teacher, the school shall provide
12	notice of the assignment to a parent of the student, not
13	later than 15 school days after the assignment.
14	"SEC. 2213. GENERAL ACCOUNTING OFFICE STUDY.

"Not later than September 30, 2005, the Comptroller 15 General of the United States shall prepare and submit to 16 the Committee on Education and the Workforce of the 17 18 House of Representatives and the Committee on Health, 19 Education, Labor, and Pensions of the Senate a study setting forth information regarding the progress of States' 20 compliance in increasing the percentage of fully qualified 21 teachers for fiscal years 2001 through 2004. 22

62

1 "SEC. 2214. DEFINITION OF FULLY QUALIFIED.

2 "(a) IN GENERAL.—In this part, the term 'fully
3 qualified', used with respect to a teacher, means a teacher
4 who—

5 "(1)(A) has demonstrated the subject matter
6 knowledge, teaching knowledge, and teaching skill
7 necessary to teach effectively in the academic subject
8 in which the teacher teaches, according to the cri9 teria described in subsections (b) and (c); and

"(B) is not a teacher for whom State certification or licensing requirements have been waived or
who is teaching under an emergency or other provisional credential; or

14 "(2) meets the standards set by the National15 Board for Professional Teaching Standards.

16 "(b) ELEMENTARY SCHOOL.—For purposes of mak17 ing the demonstration described in subsection (a)(1), each
18 teacher who teaches elementary school students (other
19 than middle school students) shall, at a minimum—

20 "(1) have State certification (which may include
21 certification obtained through an alternative route)
22 or a State license to teach; and

23 "(2) hold a bachelor's degree and demonstrate
24 the subject matter knowledge, teaching knowledge,
25 and teaching skill required to teach effectively in
26 reading, writing, mathematics, social studies,

science, and other elements of a liberal arts edu cation.

3 "(c) MIDDLE SCHOOL AND SECONDARY SCHOOL.—
4 For purposes of making the demonstration described in
5 subsection (a)(1), each teacher who teaches middle school
6 students or secondary school students shall, at a
7 minimum—

8 "(1) have State certification (which may include
9 certification obtained through an alternative route)
10 or a State license to teach; and

"(2) hold a bachelor's degree or higher degree
and demonstrate a high level of competence in all
academic subjects in which the teacher teaches
through—

15 "(A) achievement of a high level of per16 formance on rigorous academic subject area
17 tests;

18 "(B) completion of an academic major (or
19 courses totaling an equivalent number of credit
20 hours) in each of the academic subjects in
21 which the teacher teaches; or

22 "(C) in the case of teachers hired before
23 the date of enactment of the School Improve24 ment Accountability Act, completion of appro-

1	priate coursework for mastery of the academic
2	subjects in which the teacher teaches."; and
3	(3) by amending section 2215 (as so redesig-
4	nated)—
5	(A) in subsection $(a)(3)$, by adding after
6	"agency" the following: "for which at least 40
7	percent of the students served by the agency
8	are eligible for free or reduced price lunches
9	under the Richard B. Russell National School
10	Lunch Act"; and
11	(B) by inserting after subsection (a)(4) the
12	following:
13	"(5) Reporting requirements.—Each insti-
14	tution of higher education receiving assistance under
15	paragraph (1) shall fully comply with all reporting
16	requirements of title II of the Higher Education Act
17	of 1965.".
18	(c) Conforming Amendments.—The Act (20
19	U.S.C. 6301 et seq.) is amended—
20	(1) in section $2203(2)$ (20 U.S.C. $6643(2)$), by
21	striking "section 2211" and inserting "section
22	2215"; and
23	(2) in section $2205(c)(2)$ (20 U.S.C.
24	6645(c)(2)), by striking "section 2211" and insert-
25	ing "section 2215".

1 Subtitle C—Innovative Education

2 SEC. 131. REQUIREMENTS FOR STATE PLANS.

Part B of title VI (20 U.S.C. 7331 et seq.) is amend4 ed by adding at the end the following:

5 "SEC. 6203. REQUIREMENTS FOR STATE PLANS.

6 "(a) STATE PLANS.—In addition to requirements re-7 lating to State applications under this part, the State edu-8 cational agency for each State desiring a grant under this 9 title shall submit a State plan that meets the requirements 10 of this section to the Secretary at such time, in such man-11 ner, and accompanied by such information as the Sec-12 retary may require.

"(b) CONSOLIDATED PLAN.—A State plan submitted
under subsection (a) may be submitted as part of a consolidated plan under section 14302, and as part of a State
application described in section 6202.

17 "(c) CONTENTS.—Each plan submitted under sub-18 section (a) shall—

19 "(1) describe how the funds made available
20 through the grant will be used to increase student
21 academic performance;

22 "(2) describe annual, quantifiable, and measur23 able performance goals that will be used to measure
24 the impact of those funds on student performance;

1	"(3) describe the methods the State will use to
2	measure the annual impact of programs described in
3	the plan and the extent to which such goals are
4	aligned with State standards;
5	"(4) certify that the State has in place the
6	standards and assessments required under section
7	1111;
8	"(5) certify that the State educational agency
9	has a system, as required under section 1111, for—
10	"(A) holding each local educational agency
11	and school accountable for adequate yearly
12	progress (as described in section 1111(b)(2));
13	"(B) identifying local educational agencies
14	and schools for improvement and corrective ac-
15	tion (as required in sections 1116 and 1117);
16	"(C) assisting local educational agencies
17	and schools that are identified for improvement
18	with the development of improvement plans;
19	and
20	"(D) providing technical assistance, profes-
21	sional development, and other capacity building
22	as needed to get such agencies and schools out
23	of improvement status;
24	"(6) certify that the State educational agency
25	will use the disaggregated results of student assess-

1 ments required under section 1111(b)(3), and other 2 measures or indicators available, to review annually 3 the progress of each local educational agency and 4 school served under this title to determine whether 5 each such agency and school is making adequate 6 yearly progress required under section as 1111(b)(2);7

8 "(7) certify that the State educational agency 9 will take action against a local educational agency 10 that is identified for corrective action and receiving 11 funds under this title;

"(8) describe what, if any, State and other non-12 13 Federal resources will be provided to local edu-14 cational agencies and schools served under this title 15 to carry out activities consistent with this title; and "(9) certify that the State educational agency 16 17 has a system to hold local educational agencies ac-18 countable for meeting the annual performance goals 19 required under paragraph (2).

"(d) APPROVAL.—The Secretary, using a peer review
process, shall approve a State plan submitted under this
section if the State plan meets the requirements of this
section.

"(e) DURATION OF THE PLAN.—Each State plan
 shall remain in effect for the duration of the State's par ticipation under this title.

4 "(f) REQUIREMENT.—A State shall not be eligible to
5 receive funds under this title unless the State has estab6 lished the standards and assessments required under sec7 tion 1111.

8 "(g) PUBLIC REVIEW.—Each State educational agen9 cy will make publicly available the plan approved under
10 subsection (d).

11 "SEC. 6204. SANCTIONS.

12 "(a) THIRD FISCAL YEAR.—If a State receiving 13 grant funds under this title fails to meet performance 14 goals established under section 6203(c)(2) by the end of 15 the third fiscal year for which the State receives such 16 grant funds, the Secretary shall reduce by 50 percent the 17 amount the State is entitled to receive for administrative 18 expenses under this title.

"(b) FOURTH FISCAL YEAR.—If the State fails to
meet such performance goals by the end of the fourth fiscal year for which the State receives grant funds under
this title, the Secretary shall reduce the total amount the
State receives under this title by 20 percent.

"(c) TECHNICAL ASSISTANCE.—The Secretary shall
 provide technical assistance, at the request of a State sub jected to sanctions under subsection (a) or (b).

4 "(d) LOCAL SANCTIONS.—

5 "(1) IN GENERAL.—Each State receiving assist6 ance under this title shall develop a system to hold
7 local educational agencies accountable for meeting
8 the adequate yearly progress requirements estab9 lished under part A of title I and the performance
10 goals established under this title.

"(2) SANCTIONS.—A system developed under
paragraph (1) shall include a mechanism for sanctioning local educational agencies for failure to meet
such performance goals and adequate yearly
progress levels.

16 "SEC. 6205. STATE REPORTS.

17 "Each State educational agency or Chief Executive
18 Officer of a State receiving funds under this title shall
19 annually publish and disseminate to the public in a format
20 and, to the extent practicable, in a language that the pub21 lic can understand, a report on—

22 "(1) the use of such funds;

23 "(2) the impact of programs conducted with
24 such funds and an assessment of such programs' ef25 fectiveness; and

	• •
1	"(3) the progress of the State toward attaining
2	the performance goals established under section
3	6203(c)(2), and the extent to which the programs
4	have increased student achievement.
5	"SEC. 6206. STANDARDS; ASSESSMENTS ENHANCEMENT.
6	"Each State educational agency receiving a grant
7	under this title may use such grant funds, consistent with
8	section 6201(a)(1)(C), to—
9	"(1) establish high quality, internationally com-
10	petitive content and student performance standards
11	and strategies that all students will be expected to
12	meet;
13	"(2) provide for the establishment of high qual-
14	ity, rigorous assessments that include multiple meas-
15	ures and demonstrate comprehensive knowledge; or
16	"(3) develop and implement value-added assess-
17	ments.".
18	SEC. 132. PERFORMANCE OBJECTIVES.
19	Title VII (20 U.S.C. 7401 et seq.) is amended by in-
20	serting after section 7105 the following:
21	"SEC. 7106. PERFORMANCE OBJECTIVES.
22	"(a) IN GENERAL.—Each State educational agency
23	or local educational agency receiving a grant under this
24	part shall develop annual numerical performance objec-

25 tives that are age-appropriate and developmentally-appro-

priate with respect to helping limited English proficient 1 2 students become proficient in English and improve overall 3 academic performance based upon State and local content 4 and performance standards. The objectives shall include 5 incremental percentage increases for each fiscal year a State educational agency or local educational agency re-6 7 ceives a grant under this title, including increases from 8 the preceding fiscal year in the number of limited English 9 proficient students demonstrating an increase in perform-10 ance on annual assessments concerning reading, writing, 11 speaking, and listening comprehension.

12 "(b) ACCOUNTABILITY.—Each State educational 13 agency or local educational agency receiving a grant under 14 this title shall be held accountable for meeting the annual 15 numerical performance objectives under this title and the adequate yearly progress levels for limited English pro-16 17 ficient students under clauses (ii) and (iv) of section 18 1111(b)(2)(B). Any State educational agency or local edu-19 cational agency that fails to meet the annual performance objectives shall be subject to sanctions described in section 2021 14515.

22 "(c) PARENTAL NOTIFICATION.—

23 "(1) IN GENERAL.—Each State educational
24 agency or local educational agency shall notify a par25 ent of a student who is participating in a language

instruction educational program under this title, in
 a manner and form understandable to the parent,
 including, if necessary and to the extent feasible, in
 the native language of the parent, of—

"(A) the student's level of English pro-5 6 ficiency, how such level was assessed, the status 7 of the student's academic achievement, and the 8 implications of the student's educational 9 strengths and needs for age-appropriate and 10 grade-appropriate academic attainment, pro-11 motion, and graduation;

12 "(B) what programs are available to meet 13 the student's educational strengths and needs, 14 and how such programs differ in content and 15 instructional goals from other language instruc-16 tion educational programs and, in the case of a 17 student with a disability, how such available 18 programs meet the objectives of the individual-19 ized education program of such a student; and

"(C) the instructional goals of the language instruction educational program, and how the program will specifically help the limited English proficient student learn English and meet State and local content and performance standards, including—
1	"(i) the characteristics, benefits, and
2	past academic results of the language in-
3	struction educational program and of in-
4	structional alternatives; and
5	"(ii) the reasons the student was iden-
6	tified as being in need of a language in-
7	struction educational program.
8	"(2) Option to decline.—Each parent de-
9	scribed in paragraph (1) shall also be informed that
10	the parent has the option of declining the enrollment
11	of a student in a language instruction educational
12	program, and shall be given an opportunity to de-
13	cline such enrollment if the parent so chooses.
14	"(3) Special Rule.—A student shall not be
15	admitted to, or excluded from, any federally assisted
16	language instruction educational program solely on
17	the basis of a surname or language-minority sta-
18	tus.".
19	SEC. 133. REPORT CARDS.
20	Title XIV (20 U.S.C. 8801 et seq.) is amended by
21	adding at the end the following:
22	"PART I—REPORT CARDS
23	"SEC. 14901. REPORT CARDS.
24	"(a) GRANTS AUTHORIZED.—The Secretary shall
25	award a grant, from allotments under subsection (b), to

each State having a State report card meeting the require ments described in subsection (e), to enable the State, and
 local educational agencies and schools in the State, annu ally to publish report cards for each elementary school and
 secondary school that receives funding under this Act and
 is served by the State.

7 "(b) Reservations and Allotments.—

8 "(1) RESERVATIONS.—From the amount appro9 priated under subsection (j) to carry out this part
10 for each fiscal year, the Secretary shall reserve—

"(A) ¹/₂ of 1 percent of such amount for
payments to the Secretary of the Interior for
activities approved by the Secretary of Education, consistent with this part, in schools operated or supported by the Bureau of Indian
Affairs, on the basis of their respective needs
for assistance under this part; and

"(B) ¹/₂ of 1 percent of such amount for
payments to outlying areas, to be allotted in accordance with their respective needs for assistance under this part, as determined by the Secretary, for activities approved by the Secretary,
consistent with this part.

24 "(2) STATE ALLOTMENTS.—From the amount25 appropriated under subsection (j) for a fiscal year

1	and remaining after the Secretary makes reserva-
2	tions under paragraph (1), the Secretary shall allot
3	to each State having a State report card meeting
4	the requirements described in subsection (e) an
5	amount that bears the same relationship to the re-
6	mainder as the number of public school students en-
7	rolled in elementary schools and secondary schools
8	in the State bears to the number of such students
9	so enrolled in all States.
10	"(c) STATE RESERVATION OF FUNDS.—Each State
11	educational agency receiving a grant under subsection (a)
12	may reserve—
13	"(1) not more than 10 percent of the grant
13 14	"(1) not more than 10 percent of the grant funds to carry out activities described in subsections
14	funds to carry out activities described in subsections
14 15	funds to carry out activities described in subsections (e) and (g)(2) for fiscal year 2002; and
14 15 16	 funds to carry out activities described in subsections (e) and (g)(2) for fiscal year 2002; and "(2) not more than 5 percent of the grant
14 15 16 17	 funds to carry out activities described in subsections (e) and (g)(2) for fiscal year 2002; and "(2) not more than 5 percent of the grant funds to carry out activities described in subsections
14 15 16 17 18	 funds to carry out activities described in subsections (e) and (g)(2) for fiscal year 2002; and "(2) not more than 5 percent of the grant funds to carry out activities described in subsections (e) and (g)(2) for fiscal year 2003 and each of the
14 15 16 17 18 19	 funds to carry out activities described in subsections (e) and (g)(2) for fiscal year 2002; and "(2) not more than 5 percent of the grant funds to carry out activities described in subsections (e) and (g)(2) for fiscal year 2003 and each of the 3 succeeding fiscal years.
 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 	 funds to carry out activities described in subsections (e) and (g)(2) for fiscal year 2002; and "(2) not more than 5 percent of the grant funds to carry out activities described in subsections (e) and (g)(2) for fiscal year 2003 and each of the 3 succeeding fiscal years. "(d) WITHIN-STATE ALLOCATIONS.—Each State
 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 	 funds to carry out activities described in subsections (e) and (g)(2) for fiscal year 2002; and "(2) not more than 5 percent of the grant funds to carry out activities described in subsections (e) and (g)(2) for fiscal year 2003 and each of the 3 succeeding fiscal years. "(d) WITHIN-STATE ALLOCATIONS.—Each State educational agency receiving a grant under subsection (a)

25 the same relationship to the remainder as the number of

public school students enrolled in elementary schools and
 secondary schools served by the local educational agency
 bears to the number of such students served by local edu cational agencies within the State.

5 "(e) ANNUAL STATE REPORT CARD.—

6 "(1) REPORT CARDS REQUIRED.—Not later 7 than the beginning of the 2002–2003 school year, a 8 State that receives assistance under this Act shall 9 prepare and disseminate an annual report card for 10 parents, the general public, teachers, and the Sec-11 retary, with respect to all elementary schools and 12 secondary schools within the State.

"(2) REQUIRED INFORMATION.—Each State described in paragraph (1), at a minimum, shall include in the annual State report card information
regarding—

17 "(A) student performance on statewide as18 sessments for the year for which the annual
19 State report card is prepared and the preceding
20 year, in at least English language arts and
21 mathematics, including—

22 "(i) a comparison of the proportions
23 of students who performed at the basic,
24 proficient, and advanced levels in each sub25 ject area, for each grade level for which as-

1	sessments are required under title I for the
2	year for which the report card is prepared,
3	with proportions in each of the same 3 lev-
4	els in each subject area at the same grade
5	levels in the preceding school year;
6	"(ii) a statement on the most recent
7	3-year trend in the percentage of students
8	performing at the basic, proficient, and ad-
9	vanced levels in each subject area, for each
10	grade level for which assessments are re-
11	quired under title I; and
12	"(iii) a statement of the percentage of
13	students not tested and a listing of cat-
14	egories of the reasons why such students
15	were not tested;
16	"(B) student retention rates in each grade,
17	the number of students completing advanced
18	placement courses, annual school dropout rates
19	as calculated by procedures conforming with the
20	National Center for Education Statistics Com-
21	mon Core of Data, and 4-year graduation rates;
22	and
23	"(C) the professional qualifications of
24	teachers in the aggregate, including the per-

centage of teachers teaching with emergency or

1	provisional credentials, the percentage of class
2	sections not taught by fully qualified teachers,
3	and the percentage of teachers who are fully
4	qualified.
5	"(3) STUDENT DATA.—Student data in each re-
6	port card shall contain disaggregated results for the
7	following categories:
8	"(A) Racial and ethnic groups.
9	"(B) Gender groups.
10	"(C) Economically disadvantaged students,
11	as compared with students who are not eco-
12	nomically disadvantaged.
13	"(D) Students with limited English pro-
14	ficiency, as compared with students who are
15	proficient in English.
16	"(E) Migrant status groups.
17	"(F) Students with disabilities, as com-
18	pared with students who are not disabled.
19	"(4) Optional information.—A State may
20	include in the State annual report card any other in-
21	formation the State determines appropriate to re-
22	flect school quality and school achievement, includ-
23	ing by grade level information on the following:
24	"(A) Average class size.

1	"(B) School safety, such as the incidence
2	of school violence and drug and alcohol abuse.
3	"(C) The incidence of student suspensions
4	and expulsions.
5	"(D) Student access to technology, includ-
6	ing the number of computers for educational
7	purposes, the number of computers per class-
8	room, and the number of computers connected
9	to the Internet.
10	"(E) Parental involvement, as determined
11	by such measures as the extent of parental par-
12	ticipation in schools, parental involvement ac-
13	tivities, and extended learning time programs,
14	such as after-school and summer programs.
15	"(f) Local Educational Agency and School Re-
16	PORT CARDS.—
17	"(1) IN GENERAL.—The State shall ensure that
18	each local educational agency, elementary school,
19	and secondary school in the State, collects appro-
20	priate data and publishes an annual report card con-
21	sistent with this subsection.
22	"(2) REQUIRED INFORMATION.—Each local
23	educational agency, elementary school, and sec-
24	ondary school described in paragraph (1), at a min-
25	imum, shall include in its annual report card—

1	"(A) the information described in para-
2	graphs (2) and (3) of subsection (e) for each
3	local educational agency and school;
4	"(B) in the case of a local educational
5	agency—
6	"(i) information regarding the number
7	and percentage of schools served by the
8	local educational agency that are identified
9	for school improvement, including schools
10	identified under section 1116;
11	"(ii) information on the most recent
12	3-year trend in the number and percentage
13	of elementary schools and secondary
14	schools served by the local educational
15	agency that are identified for school im-
16	provement; and
17	"(iii) information on how students in
18	the schools served by the local educational
19	agency performed on the statewide assess-
20	ment compared with students in the State
21	as a whole;
22	"(C) in the case of an elementary school or
23	a secondary school—

	-
1	"(i) information regarding whether
2	the school has been identified for school
3	improvement;
4	"(ii) information on how the school's
5	students performed on the statewide as-
6	sessment compared with students in
7	schools served by the same local edu-
8	cational agency and with all students in
9	the State; and
10	"(iii) information about the enroll-
11	ment of students compared with the rated
12	capacity of the schools; and
13	"(D) other appropriate information, re-
14	gardless of whether the information is included
15	in the annual State report.
16	"(g) Dissemination and Accessibility of Re-
17	PORT CARDS.—
18	"(1) Report card format.—Annual report
19	cards under this part shall be—
20	"(A) concise; and
21	"(B) presented in a format and manner
22	that parents can understand, including, to the
23	extent practicable, in a language the parents
24	can understand.

"(2) STATE REPORT CARDS.—State annual report cards under subsection (e) shall be disseminated to all elementary schools, secondary schools,
and local educational agencies in the State, and
made broadly available to the public through means
such as posting on the Internet and distribution to
the media, and through public agencies.

"(3) LOCAL REPORT CARDS.—Local educational 8 9 agency report cards under subsection (f) shall be 10 disseminated to all elementary schools and secondary 11 schools served by the local educational agency and to 12 parents of students attending such schools, and 13 made broadly available to the public through means 14 such as posting on the Internet and distribution to 15 the media, and through public agencies.

"(4) SCHOOL REPORT CARDS.—Elementary
school and secondary school report cards under subsection (f) shall be disseminated to parents of students attending that school, and made broadly available to the public through means such as posting on
the Internet and distribution to the media, and
through public agencies.

23 "(h) COORDINATION OF STATE PLAN CONTENT.—A24 State shall include in its plan under part A of title I or

part B of title II, an assurance that the State has in effect
 a policy that meets the requirements of this section.

3 "(i) PRIVACY.—Information collected under this sec4 tion shall be collected and disseminated in a manner that
5 protects the privacy of individuals.

6 "(j) AUTHORIZATION OF APPROPRIATIONS.—There
7 are authorized to be appropriated to carry out this part
8 \$5,000,000 for fiscal year 2002 and such sums as may
9 be necessary for each of the 4 succeeding fiscal years.

10 **"PART J—ADDITIONAL PERFORMANCE AND**

11 ACCOUNTABILITY PROVISIONS

12 "SEC. 14911. REWARDING HIGH PERFORMANCE.

13 "(a) State Rewards.—

14 "(1) IN GENERAL.—From amounts appro15 priated under subsection (d), the Secretary shall
16 make awards to States that—

17 "(A) for 3 consecutive years have—

18 "(i) exceeded the State performance
19 goals and objectives established for any
20 title under this Act;

21 "(ii) exceeded the adequate yearly
22 progress levels established under section
23 1111(b)(2);

24 "(iii) significantly narrowed the gaps25 between minority and nonminority stu-

1	dents, and between economically disadvan-
2	taged students and students who are not
3	economically disadvantaged;
4	"(iv) raised all students to the pro-
5	ficient standard level prior to 10 years
6	after the date of enactment of the School
7	Improvement Accountability Act; or
8	"(v) significantly increased the per-
9	centage of core classes being taught by
10	fully qualified teachers, in schools receiving
11	funds under part A of title I; or
12	"(B) by not later than fiscal year 2005,
13	ensure that all teachers teaching in the State
14	public elementary schools and secondary schools
15	are fully qualified.
16	"(2) STATE USE OF FUNDS.—
17	"(A) DEMONSTRATION SITES.—Each State
18	receiving an award under paragraph (1) shall
19	use a portion of the award funds that are not
20	distributed under subsection (b) to establish
21	demonstration sites with respect to high-per-
22	forming schools (based upon achievement, or
23	performance levels and adequate yearly
24	progress) in order to help low-performing
25	schools.

1 "(B) Improvement of performance.— 2 Each State receiving an award under paragraph 3 (1) shall use the portion of the award funds 4 that are not used pursuant to subparagraph (A) 5 or (C) and are not distributed under subsection 6 (b) for the purpose of improving the level of 7 performance of all elementary school and sec-8 ondary school students in the State, based upon 9 State content and performance standards. 10 "(C) RESERVATION FOR ADMINISTRATIVE

11 EXPENSES.—Each State receiving an award 12 under paragraph (1) may set aside not more 13 than ¹/₂ of 1 percent of the award funds for the 14 planning and administrative costs of carrying 15 out this section, including the costs of distrib-16 uting awards to local educational agencies.

17 "(b) LOCAL EDUCATIONAL AGENCY AWARDS.—

18 "(1) IN GENERAL.—Each State receiving an
19 award under subsection (a)(1) shall distribute 80
20 percent of the award funds to local educational
21 agencies in the State that—

22 "(A) for 3 consecutive years have—
23 "(i) exceeded the State-established
24 local educational agency performance goals

1 and objectives established for any title 2 under this Act; "(ii) exceeded the adequate yearly 3 4 progress levels established under section 1111(b)(2);5 6 "(iii) significantly narrowed the gaps 7 between minority and nonminority stu-8 dents, and between economically disadvan-9 taged students and students who are not 10 economically disadvantaged; 11 "(iv) raised all students enrolled in schools served by the local educational 12 13 agency to the proficient standard level 14 prior to 10 years from the date of enact-15 ment of the School Improvement Account-16 ability Act; or 17 "(v) significantly increased the per-18 centage of core classes being taught by 19 fully qualified teachers, in schools receiving 20 funds under part A of title I; "(B) not later than December 31, 2005, 21 22 ensure that all teachers teaching in the elemen-23 tary schools and secondary schools served by 24 the local educational agency are fully qualified; 25 or

"(C) 1 have attained consistently high 2 achievement in another area that the State de-3 termines appropriate to reward. "(2) School-based performance awards.— 4 5 A local educational agency shall use funds made 6 available under paragraph (1) for activities described 7 in subsection (c) such as school-based performance 8 awards. 9 "(3) Reservation for administrative ex-10 PENSES.—Each local educational agency receiving 11 an award under paragraph (1) may set aside not 12 more than $\frac{1}{2}$ of 1 percent of the award funds for 13 the planning and administrative costs of carrying 14 out this section, including the costs of distributing 15 awards to eligible elementary schools and secondary 16 schools, teachers, and principals. 17 "(c) SCHOOL REWARDS.—Each local educational 18 agency receiving an award under subsection (b) shall con-19 sult with teachers and principals to develop a reward system, and shall use the award funds— 20 "(1) to reward individual schools that dem-21 22 onstrate high performance with respect to— 23

"(A) increasing the academic achievement of all students;

1	"(B) narrowing the academic achievement
2	gap described in section 1111(b)(2)(B)(iv);
3	"(C) improving teacher quality;
4	"(D) increasing high-quality professional
5	development for teachers, principals, and ad-
6	ministrators; or
7	"(E) improving the English proficiency of
8	limited English proficient students;
9	"(2) to reward collaborative teams of teachers,
10	or teams of teachers and principals, that—
11	"(A) significantly increase the annual per-
12	formance of low-performing students; or
13	"(B) significantly improve in a fiscal year
14	the English proficiency of limited English pro-
15	ficient students;
16	"(3) to reward principals who successfully raise
17	the performance of a substantial number of low-per-
18	forming students to high academic levels;
19	"(4) to develop or implement school district-
20	wide programs or policies to increase the level of
21	student performance on State assessments that are
22	aligned with State content standards; and
23	"(5) to reward schools for consistently high
24	achievement in another area that the local edu-
25	cational agency determines appropriate to reward.

"(d) AUTHORIZATION OF APPROPRIATIONS.—There
 are authorized to be appropriated to carry out this section
 \$200,000,000 for fiscal year 2002, and such sums as may
 be necessary for each of the 4 succeeding fiscal years.

5 "(e) DEFINITION.—The term 'low-performing stu6 dent' means a student who is below a basic State standard
7 level.".

8 SEC. 134. ADDITIONAL ACCOUNTABILITY PROVISIONS.

9 Part E of title XIV (20 U.S.C. 8891 et seq.) is10 amended by adding at the end the following:

11 "SEC. 14515. ADDITIONAL ACCOUNTABILITY PROVISIONS.

"(a) IN GENERAL.—Notwithstanding any other provision of this Act, a recipient of funds provided for a fiscal
year under part A of title I, part A or C of title III, part
A of title IV, part A of title V, or title VII, shall include—

16 (1) in the plans or applications required under
17 such part or title—

(A) the methods the recipient will use to
measure the annual impact of each program
funded in whole or in part with funds provided
under such part or title and, if applicable, the
extent to which each such program will increase
student academic achievement;

24 (B) the annual, quantifiable, and measur-25 able performance goals and objectives for each

1 such program, and the extent to which, if appli-2 cable, the program's performance goals and ob-3 jectives align with State content standards and 4 State student performance standards estab-5 lished under section 1111(b)(1)(A); and 6 (C) if the recipient is a local educational 7 agency, assurances that the local educational 8 agency consulted, at a minimum, with parents, 9 school board members, teachers, administrators, 10 business partners, education organizations, and 11 community groups to develop the plan or appli-

12 cation submitted and that such consultation will13 continue on a regular basis; and

14 "(2) in the reports required under such part or 15 title, a report for the preceding fiscal year regarding 16 how the plan or application submitted for such fiscal 17 year under such part or title was implemented, the 18 recipient's progress toward attaining the perform-19 ance goals and objectives identified in the plan or 20 application for such year, and, if applicable, the ex-21 tent to which programs funded in whole or in part 22 with funds provided under such part or title in-23 creased student achievement.

24 "(b) PENALTIES.—If a recipient of funds under a25 part or title described in subsection (a) fails to meet the

1	performance goals and objectives of the part or title for
2	3 consecutive fiscal years, the Secretary shall—
3	((1) withhold not less than 50 percent of the
4	funds made available under the relevant program for
5	administrative expenses for the succeeding fiscal
6	year, and for each consecutive fiscal year until the
7	recipient meets such performance goals and objec-
8	tives; and
9	"(2) in the case of—
10	"(A) a competitive grant (as determined by
11	the Secretary), consider the recipient ineligible
12	for grants under the part or title until the re-
13	cipient meets such performance goals and objec-
14	tives; and
15	"(B) a formula grant (as determined by
16	the Secretary), withhold not less than 20 per-
17	cent of the total amount of funds provided
18	under title VI for the succeeding fiscal year and
19	each consecutive fiscal year until the recipient
20	meets such goals and objectives.
21	"(c) Other Penalties.—A State that has not met
22	the requirements of subsection $(a)(1)(B)$ with respect to
23	a fiscal year—
24	"(1) shall not be eligible for designation as an
25	Ed-Flex Partnership State under the Education

1	Flexibility Partnership Act of 1999 until the State
2	meets the requirements of subsection $(a)(1)(B)$; and
3	((2) shall be subject to such other penalties as
4	are provided in this Act for failure to meet the re-
5	quirements of subsection (a)(1)(B).
6	"(d) Special Rule for Secretary Awards.—
7	"(1) IN GENERAL.—Notwithstanding any other
8	provision of this Act, a recipient of funds provided
9	under a direct award made by the Secretary, or a
10	contract or cooperative agreement entered into with
11	the Secretary, for a program shall include the fol-
12	lowing information in any application or plan re-
13	quired for such program:
14	"(A) How funds provided under the pro-
15	gram will be used and how such use will in-
16	crease student academic achievement.
17	"(B) The goals and objectives to be met,
18	including goals for dissemination and use of the
19	information or materials produced, where appli-
20	cable.
21	"(C) If the grant requires dissemination of
22	information or materials, how the recipient will
23	track and report annually to the Secretary—
24	"(i) the successful dissemination of in-
25	formation or materials produced;

1	"(ii) where information or materials
2	produced are being used; and
3	"(iii) the impact of such use and, if
4	applicable, the extent to which such use in-
5	creased student academic achievement or
6	contributed to the stated goal of the pro-
7	gram.
8	"(2) Requirement.—If no application or plan
9	is required under a program described in paragraph
10	(1), the Secretary shall require the recipient of funds
11	to submit a plan containing the information required
12	under paragraph (1).
13	"(3) FAILURE TO ACHIEVE GOALS AND OBJEC-
14	TIVES.—
15	"(A) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary shall
16	evaluate the information submitted under this
17	subsection to determine whether the recipient
18	has met the goals and objectives described in
19	paragraph $(1)(B)$, where applicable, assess the
20	magnitude of dissemination described in para-
21	graph $(1)(C)$, and, where applicable, assess the
22	effectiveness of the activity funded in raising
23	student academic achievement in places where
24	information or materials produced with such
25	funds are used.

"(B) INELIGIBILITY.—The Secretary shall 1 2 consider the recipient ineligible for grants, contracts, or cooperative agreements under the 3 4 program described in paragraph (1) if— "(i) the goals and objectives described 5 6 in paragraph (1)(B) have not been met; 7 "(ii) where applicable, the dissemina-8 tion has not been of a magnitude to ensure 9 goals and objectives are being addressed; 10 and 11 "(iii) where applicable, the informa-12 tion or materials produced have not made 13 a significant impact on raising student 14 achievement in places where such informa-15 tion or materials are used.". TITLE II—CLOSING THE 16 **ACHIEVEMENT GAP** 17 Subtitle A—Reauthorization of 18 19

Programs

20 SEC. 201. AUTHORIZATION OF APPROPRIATIONS.

21 (a) IN GENERAL.—Section 1002(a) (20 U.S.C. 22 6302(a))is amended by striking "appropriated 23 \$7,400,000,000 for fiscal year 1995" and all that follows period 24 through the and inserting the following: "appropriated-25

1	"(1) \$11,000,000,000 for fiscal year 2002;
2	"(2) \$13,000,000,000 for fiscal year 2003;
3	"(3) \$15,000,000,000 for fiscal year 2004;
4	"(4) \$15,000,000,000 for fiscal year 2005; and
5	"(5) \$15,000,000,000 for fiscal year 2006.".
6	(b) REVIEW OF ALLOCATIONS.—The Secretary of
7	Education shall annually review the manner in which
8	funds are allocated under title I of the Elementary and
9	Secondary Education Act of 1965 (20 U.S.C. 6301 et
10	seq.) to ensure that local education agencies with the high-
11	est need are receiving funds in proportion to that need
12	as compared to other local education agencies.
13	Subtitle B—Options: Opportunities
14	to Improve our Nation's Schools
15	SEC. 211. OPTIONS: OPPORTUNITIES TO IMPROVE OUR NA-
16	TION'S SCHOOLS.
17	Title V (20 U.S.C. 7201 et seq.) is amended by add-
18	ing at the end the following:
19	"PART D—OPTIONS: OPPORTUNITIES TO
20	IMPROVE OUR NATION'S SCHOOLS
21	"SEC. 5401. PURPOSE.
22	"It is the purpose of this part to identify and support
23	innovative approaches to high-quality public school choice
24	by providing financial assistance for the demonstration,
	~ providing information assistance for the demonstration,
25	development, implementation, and evaluation of, and the

dissemination of information about, public school choice
 programs that stimulate educational innovation for all
 public schools and contribute to standards-based school re form efforts.

5 "SEC. 5402. GRANTS.

6 "(a) IN GENERAL.—From funds appropriated under 7 section 5405(a) and not reserved under section 5405(b), 8 the Secretary is authorized to make grants to State and 9 local educational agencies to support programs that pro-10 mote innovative approaches to high-quality public school 11 choice.

12 "(b) DURATION.—A grant under this part shall not13 be awarded for a period that exceeds 3 years.

14 "SEC. 5403. USES OF FUNDS.

15 "(a) USES OF FUNDS.—

"(1) IN GENERAL.—Funds under this part may 16 17 be used to demonstrate, develop, implement, and 18 evaluate, and to disseminate information about, in-19 novative approaches to broaden public elementary 20 school and secondary school choice, including the de-21 sign and development of new public school choice op-22 tions, the development of new strategies for over-23 coming barriers to effective public school choice, and 24 the design and development of public school choice 25 systems that promote high standards for all students

1	and the continuous improvement of all such public
2	schools.
3	"(2) EXAMPLES.—The approaches described in
4	paragraph (1) at the school, school district, and
5	State levels may include—
6	"(A) inter school district approaches to
7	public school choice, including approaches that
8	increase equal access to high-quality educational
9	programs and diversity in schools;
10	"(B) public elementary and secondary pro-
11	grams that involve partnerships with institu-
12	tions of higher education and that are located
13	on the campuses of the institutions;
14	"(C) programs that allow students in pub-
15	lic secondary schools to enroll in postsecondary
16	courses and to receive both secondary and post-
17	secondary academic credit;
18	"(D) worksite satellite schools, in which
19	State or local educational agencies form part-
20	nerships with public or private employers, to
21	create public schools at parents' places of em-
22	ployment; and
23	"(E) approaches to school desegregation
24	that provide students and parents choice
25	through strategies other than magnet schools.

	98
1	"(b) LIMITATIONS.—Funds under this part—
2	((1) shall supplement, and not supplant, non-
3	Federal funds expended for existing programs;
4	"(2) may be used for providing transportation
5	services or costs, except that not more than 10 per-
6	cent of the funds received under this part may be
7	used by the local educational agency to provide such
8	services or costs;
9	"(3) may be used for improving low performing
10	schools that lose students as a result of school choice
11	plans, except that not more than 10 percent of the
12	funds under this part may be used by the local edu-
13	cational agency for the improvement of low per-
14	forming schools; and
15	"(4) shall not be used to fund programs that
16	are authorized under part C, D, or E.
17	"SEC. 5404. GRANT APPLICATION; PRIORITIES.
18	"(a) APPLICATION REQUIRED.—A State or local edu-
19	cational agency desiring to receive a grant under this part
20	shall submit an application to the Secretary in such form
21	and containing such information as the Secretary may re-
22	quire.

23 "(b) APPLICATION CONTENTS.—Each application24 shall include—

1	((1) a description of the program for which
2	funds are sought and the goals for such program;
3	((2) a description of how the program funded
4	under this part will be coordinated with, and will
5	complement and enhance, programs under other re-
6	lated Federal and non-Federal programs;
7	"(3) if the program includes partners, the name
8	of each partner and a description of the partner's
9	responsibilities; and
10	"(4) a description of the policies and procedures
11	the agency will use to ensure—
12	"(A) that priority is provided to parents of
13	students attending schools identified for school
14	improvement under section 1116 in exercising
15	choice among schools;
16	"(B) that priority is provided to parents of
17	students who want to stay enrolled at a school;
18	"(C) the agency's accountability for re-
19	sults, including the agency's goals and perform-
20	ance indicators;
21	"(D) that the program is open and acces-
22	sible to, and will promote high academic stand-
23	ards for, all students regardless of the achieve-
24	ment level or disability of the students and the
25	family income of the families of the students;

"(E) that all parents are provided with 1 2 easily comprehensible information about various school options, including information on in-3 4 structional approaches at different schools, re-5 sources, and transportation that will be pro-6 vided at or for the schools on an annual basis; 7 "(F) that all parents are given timely no-8 tice about opportunities to choose which school 9 their child will attend the following year and 10 the period during which the choice may be 11 made; 12 "(G) that limitations on transfers between 13 schools only occur because of facilities con-14 straints, statutory class size limits, and local ef-15 forts to ensure that schools reflect the diversity 16 of the communities in which the schools are lo-17 cated; 18 "(H) that a lottery or other random sys-19 tem be established for parents of students wish-20 ing to attend a school that cannot receive all 21 students wishing to attend; and 22 "(I) that the program is carried out in a 23

manner consistent with Federal law, including court orders, such as desegregation orders, issued to enforce Federal law.

24

1 "(c) PRIORITIES.—

2 "(1) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary shall give a
3 priority to applications for programs that will serve
4 high-poverty local educational agencies.

5 "(2) PERMISSIVE.—The Secretary may give a 6 priority to applications demonstrating that the State 7 or local educational agency will carry out the agen-8 cy's program in partnership with one or more public 9 or private agencies, organizations, or institutions, in-10 cluding institutions of higher education and public 11 or private employers.

12 "SEC. 5405. AUTHORIZATION OF APPROPRIATIONS; RES-13 ERVATION; EVALUATIONS.

"(a) AUTHORIZATION OF APPROPRIATIONS.—For the
purpose of carrying out this part, there are authorized to
be appropriated \$100,000,000 for each of fiscal years
2002 through 2006.

"(b) RESERVATION FOR EVALUATION, TECHNICAL
ASSISTANCE, AND DISSEMINATION.—From the amount
appropriated under subsection (a) for any fiscal year, the
Secretary may reserve not more than 5 percent to carry
out evaluations under subsection (c), to provide technical
assistance, and to disseminate information.

24 "(c) EVALUATIONS.—The Secretary may use funds25 reserved under subsection (b) to carry out one or more

1	evaluations of programs assisted under this part, which,
2	at a minimum, shall address—
3	"(1) how, and the extent to which, the pro-
4	grams supported with funds under this part promote
5	educational equity and excellence; and
6	((2) the extent to which public schools of choice
7	supported with funds under this part are—
8	"(A) held accountable to the public;
9	"(B) effective in improving public edu-
10	cation; and
11	"(C) open and accessible to all students.".
	Subtitle C—Parental Involvement
12	Subtitle C—I arentai involvement
12 13	SEC. 221. STATE PLANS.
13	SEC. 221. STATE PLANS.
13 14	SEC. 221. STATE PLANS. Section 1111 (20 U.S.C. 6311) is amended—
13 14 15	SEC. 221. STATE PLANS. Section 1111 (20 U.S.C. 6311) is amended— (1) by redesignating subsections (d) through (g)
13 14 15 16	SEC. 221. STATE PLANS. Section 1111 (20 U.S.C. 6311) is amended— (1) by redesignating subsections (d) through (g) as subsections (e) through (h), respectively; and
13 14 15 16 17	SEC. 221. STATE PLANS. Section 1111 (20 U.S.C. 6311) is amended— (1) by redesignating subsections (d) through (g) as subsections (e) through (h), respectively; and (2) by inserting after subsection (c) the fol-
 13 14 15 16 17 18 	SEC. 221. STATE PLANS. Section 1111 (20 U.S.C. 6311) is amended— (1) by redesignating subsections (d) through (g) as subsections (e) through (h), respectively; and (2) by inserting after subsection (c) the following:
 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 	 SEC. 221. STATE PLANS. Section 1111 (20 U.S.C. 6311) is amended— (1) by redesignating subsections (d) through (g) as subsections (e) through (h), respectively; and (2) by inserting after subsection (c) the following: "(d) PARENTAL INVOLVEMENT.—Each State plan
 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 	SEC. 221. STATE PLANS. Section 1111 (20 U.S.C. 6311) is amended— (1) by redesignating subsections (d) through (g) as subsections (e) through (h), respectively; and (2) by inserting after subsection (c) the following: "(d) PARENTAL INVOLVEMENT.—Each State plan shall demonstrate that the State will support, in collabora-
 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 	SEC. 221. STATE PLANS. Section 1111 (20 U.S.C. 6311) is amended— (1) by redesignating subsections (d) through (g) as subsections (e) through (h), respectively; and (2) by inserting after subsection (c) the following: "(d) PARENTAL INVOLVEMENT.—Each State plan shall demonstrate that the State will support, in collaboration with the regional educational laboratories, the collection
 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 	SEC. 221. STATE PLANS. Section 1111 (20 U.S.C. 6311) is amended— (1) by redesignating subsections (d) through (g) as subsections (e) through (h), respectively; and (2) by inserting after subsection (c) the following: "(d) PARENTAL INVOLVEMENT.—Each State plan shall demonstrate that the State will support, in collaboration with the regional educational laboratories, the collection and dissemination to local educational agencies and

1 "(1) be based on the most current research on 2 effective parental involvement that fosters achieve-3 ment to high standards for all children; and "(2) be geared toward lowering barriers to 4 5 greater participation in school planning, review, and 6 improvement experienced by parents.". 7 SEC. 222. PARENTAL ASSISTANCE. 8 Part D of title I (20 U.S.C. 6421 et seq.) is amended to read as follows: 9 10 "PART D—PARENTAL ASSISTANCE AND CHILD 11 **OPPORTUNITY** 12 "Subpart I—Parental Assistance". 13 "SEC. 1401. PARENTAL INFORMATION AND RESOURCE CEN-14 TERS. "(a) PURPOSE.—The purpose of this part is— 15 16 "(1) to provide leadership, technical assistance, 17 and financial support to nonprofit organizations and 18 local educational agencies to help the organizations 19 and agencies implement successful and effective pa-20 rental involvement policies, programs, and activities 21 that lead to improvements in student performance; "(2) to strengthen partnerships among parents 22 23 (including parents of preschool age children), teach-24 ers, principals, administrators, and other school per-25 sonnel in meeting the educational needs of children;

	104
1	((3) to develop and strengthen the relationship
2	between parents and the school;
3	"(4) to further the developmental progress pri-
4	marily of children assisted under this part; and
5	"(5) to coordinate activities funded under this
6	part with parental involvement initiatives funded
7	under section 1118 and other provisions of this Act.
8	"(b) GRANTS AUTHORIZED.—
9	"(1) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary is authorized
10	to award grants in each fiscal year to nonprofit or-
11	ganizations, and nonprofit organizations in consortia
12	with local educational agencies, to establish school-
13	linked or school-based parental information and re-
14	source centers that provide training, information,
15	and support to—
16	"(A) parents of children enrolled in ele-
17	mentary schools and secondary schools;
18	"(B) individuals who work with the par-
19	ents described in subparagraph (A); and
20	"(C) State educational agencies, local edu-
21	cational agencies, schools, organizations that
22	support family-school partnerships (such as
23	parent-teacher associations), and other organi-
24	zations that carry out parent education and
25	family involvement programs.

"(2) AWARD RULE.—In awarding grants under
 this part, the Secretary shall ensure that such
 grants are distributed in all geographic regions of
 the United States.

5 "SEC. 1402. APPLICATIONS.

6 "(a)	GRANTS APPLICATION	IS
--------	--------------------	----

"(1) IN GENERAL.—Each nonprofit organization or nonprofit organization in consortium with a
local educational agency that desires a grant under
this part shall submit an application to the Secretary at such time and in such manner as the Secretary shall require.

13 "(2) CONTENTS.—Each application submitted
14 under paragraph (1), at a minimum, shall include
15 assurances that the organization or consortium
16 will—

17 "(A)(i) be governed by a board of directors18 the membership of which includes parents; or

19 "(ii) be an organization or consortium that20 represents the interests of parents;

21 "(B) establish a special advisory committee
22 the membership of which includes—

23 "(i) parents described in section
24 1401(b)(1)(A);

	106
1	"(ii) representatives of education pro-
2	fessionals with expertise in improving serv-
3	ices for disadvantaged children; and
4	"(iii) representatives of local elemen-
5	tary schools and secondary schools who
6	may include students and representatives
7	from local youth organizations;
8	"(C) use at least $\frac{1}{2}$ of the funds provided
9	under this part in each fiscal year to serve
10	areas with high concentrations of low-income
11	families in order to serve parents who are se-
12	verely educationally or economically disadvan-
13	taged;
14	"(D) operate a center of sufficient size,
15	scope, and quality to ensure that the center is
16	adequate to serve the parents in the area;
17	"(E) serve both urban and rural areas;
18	"(F) design a center that meets the unique
19	training, information, and support needs of par-
20	ents described in section $1401(b)(1)(A)$, par-
21	ticularly such parents who are educationally or
22	economically disadvantaged;
23	"(G) demonstrate the capacity and exper-

tise to conduct the effective training, informa-

1	tion and support activities for which assistance
2	is sought;
3	"(H) network with—
4	"(i) local educational agencies and
5	schools;
6	"(ii) parents of children enrolled in el-
7	ementary schools and secondary schools;
8	"(iii) parent training and information
9	centers assisted under section 682 of the
10	Individuals with Disabilities Education
11	Act;
12	"(iv) clearinghouses; and
13	"(v) other organizations and agencies;
14	"(I) focus on serving parents described in
15	section $1401(b)(1)(A)$ who are parents of low-
16	income, minority, and limited English pro-
17	ficient, children;
18	"(J) use part of the funds received under
19	this part to establish, expand, or operate Par-
20	ents as Teachers programs or Home Instruction
21	for Preschool Youngsters programs;
22	"(K) provide assistance to parents in such
23	areas as understanding State and local stand-
24	ards and measures of student and school per-
25	formance; and

"(L) work with State and local educational
 agencies to determine parental needs and deliv ery of services.

"(b) GRANT RENEWAL.—For each fiscal year after 4 the first fiscal year an organization or consortium receives 5 assistance under this part, the organization or consortium 6 7 shall demonstrate in the application submitted for such 8 fiscal year after the first fiscal year that a portion of the 9 services provided by the organization or consortium is sup-10 ported through non-Federal contributions, which contribu-11 tions may be in cash or in kind.

12 "SEC. 1403. USES OF FUNDS.

13 "(a) IN GENERAL.—Grant funds received under this14 part shall be used—

"(1) to assist parents in participating effectively
in their children's education and to help their children meet State and local standards, such as assisting parents—

"(A) to engage in activities that will improve student performance, including understanding the accountability systems in place
within their State educational agency and local
educational agency and understanding their
children's educational performance in comparison to State and local standards;
1	"(B) to provide followup support for their
2	children's educational achievement;
3	"(C) to communicate effectively with
4	teachers, principals, counselors, administrators,
5	and other school personnel;
6	"(D) to become active participants in the
7	development, implementation, and review of
8	school-parent compacts, parent involvement
9	policies, and school planning and improvement;
10	"(E) to participate in the design and provi-
11	sion of assistance to students who are not mak-
12	ing adequate educational progress;
13	"(F) to participate in State and local deci-
14	sionmaking; and
15	"(G) to train other parents;
16	((2) to obtain information about the range of
17	options, programs, services, and resources available
18	at the national, State, and local levels to assist par-
19	ents and school personnel who work with parents;
20	"(3) to help the parents learn and use the tech-
21	nology applied in their children's education;
22	"(4) to plan, implement, and fund activities for
23	parents that coordinate the education of their chil-
24	dren with other Federal programs that serve their
25	children or their families; and

1	"(5) to provide support for State or local edu-
2	cational personnel if the participation of such per-
3	sonnel will further the activities assisted under the
4	grant.
5	"(b) PERMISSIVE ACTIVITIES.—Grant funds received
6	under this part may be used to assist schools with activi-
7	ties such as—
8	"(1) developing and implementing their plans
9	or activities under sections 1118 and 1119; and
10	"(2) developing and implementing school im-
11	provement plans, including addressing problems that
12	develop in the implementation of sections 1118 and
13	1119.
14	"(3) providing information about assessment
15	and individual results to parents in a manner and a
16	language the family can understand;
17	"(4) coordinating the efforts of Federal, State,
18	and local parent education and family involvement
19	initiatives; and
20	"(5) providing training, information, and sup-
21	port to—
22	"(A) State educational agencies;
23	"(B) local educational agencies and
24	schools, especially those local educational agen-
25	cies and schools that are low performing; and

"(C) organizations that support family school partnerships.

3 "(c) GRANDFATHER CLAUSE.—The Secretary shall 4 use funds made available under this part to continue to 5 make grant or contract payments to each entity that was awarded a multivear grant or contract under title IV of 6 7 the Goals 2000: Educate America Act (as such title was 8 in effect on the day before the date of enactment of the 9 Educational Excellence for All Learners Act of 2001) for 10 the duration of the grant or contract award.

11 "SEC. 1403A. LOCAL FAMILY INFORMATION CENTERS.

"(a) CENTERS AUTHORIZED.—The Secretary shall 12 13 award grants to, and enter into contracts and cooperative agreements with, local nonprofit parent organizations to 14 15 enable the organizations to support local family information centers that help ensure that parents of students in 16 17 schools assisted under part A have the training, information, and support the parents need to enable the parents 18 19 to participate effectively in helping their children to meet challenging State standards. 20

21 "(b) DEFINITION OF LOCAL NONPROFIT PARENT
22 ORGANIZATION.—In this section, the term 'local nonprofit
23 parent organization' means a private nonprofit organiza24 tion (other than an institution of higher education) that—

1	"(1) has a demonstrated record of working with
2	low-income individuals and parents;
3	"(2)(A) has a board of directors the majority of
4	whom are parents of students in schools that are as-
5	sisted under part A and located in the geographic
6	area to be served by the center; or
7	"(B) has a special governing committee to di-
8	rect and implement the center, a majority of the
9	members of whom are parents of students in schools
10	assisted under part A; and
11	"(3) is located in a community with schools
12	that receive funds under part A, and is accessible to
13	the families of students in those schools.
14	"(c) REQUIRED CENTER ACTIVITIES.—Each center
15	assisted under this section shall be exempt from the uses
16	of funds requirements under section 1403 and shall
17	instead—
18	"(1) provide training, information, and support
19	that meets the needs of parents of children in
20	schools assisted under part A who are served
21	through the grant, contract, or cooperative agree-
22	ment, particularly underserved parents, low-income
23	parents, parents of students with limited English
24	proficiency, parents of students with disabilities, and
25	parents of students in schools identified for school

improvement or corrective action under section
 1116(c);

3 "(2) help families of students enrolled in a
4 school assisted under part A to understand and par5 ticipate in all of the provisions of this Act designed
6 to improve the achievement of students in the
7 school;

8 "(3) provide information in a language and 9 form that parents understand, including taking steps 10 to ensure that underserved parents, low-income par-11 ents, parents with limited English proficiency, par-12 ents of students with disabilities, or parents of stu-13 dents in schools identified for school improvement or 14 corrective action, are effectively informed and as-15 sisted;

16 "(4) assist parents to—

"(A) understand what their child's school
is doing to enable students at the school to
meet the State and local standards, including
understanding the curriculum and instructional
methods the school is using to help the students
meet the standards;

23 "(B) better understand their child's edu24 cational needs, where their child stands with re25 spect to State standards, how the school is ad-

1	dressing the child's education needs, and how
2	they can work with their child to increase the
3	child's academic achievement;
4	"(C) participate in the decisionmaking
5	processes at the school, school district, and
6	State levels;
7	"(D) understand and benefit from the pro-
8	visions of other Federal education programs;
9	and
10	"(E) understand public school choice op-
11	tions available in the local community, including
12	magnet schools, charter schools, and alternative
13	schools;
14	"(5) be designed to meet the specific needs of
15	families who experience significant isolation from
16	available sources of information and support; and
17	"(6) report annually to the Secretary regarding
18	measures, determined by the Secretary, that indicate
19	the program's effectiveness in reaching underserved
20	parents and developing meaningful parent involve-
21	ment in schools assisted under part A.
22	"(c) Application Requirements.—Each local non-
23	profit parent organization desiring assistance under this
24	section shall submit to the Secretary an application (in
25	place of the application required under section 1402) at

such time, in such manner, and accompanied by such in formation as the Secretary may require. Each such appli cation shall—

4 "(1) describe how the organization will use the
5 assistance to help families under this section;

6 "(2) describe what steps the organization has 7 taken to meet with school district or school per-8 sonnel in the geographic area to be served by the 9 center in order to inform the personnel of the plan 10 and application for the assistance; and

11 "(3) identify with specificity the special efforts
12 that the organization will take—

"(A) to ensure that the needs for training, 13 14 information, and support for parents of stu-15 dents in schools assisted under part A, particu-16 larly underserved parents, low-income parents, 17 parents with limited English proficiency, par-18 ents of students with disabilities, and parents of 19 students in schools identified for school im-20 provement or corrective action, are effectively 21 met; and

22 "(B) to work with community-based orga-23 nizations.

24 "(d) DISTRIBUTION OF FUNDS.—

1	"(1) Allocation of funds.—The Secretary
2	shall make at least 2 awards of assistance under this
3	section to a local nonprofit parent organization in
4	each State, unless the Secretary does not receive at
5	least 2 applications from such organizations in a
6	State of sufficient quality to warrant providing the
7	assistance in the State.
8	"(2) Selection requirement for local
9	FAMILY INFORMATION CENTERS.—
10	"(A) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary shall
11	select local nonprofit parent organizations in a
12	State to receive assistance under this section in
13	a manner that ensures the provision of the most
14	effective assistance to low-income parents of
15	students in schools assisted under part A.
16	"(B) PRIORITY.—The Secretary shall give
17	priority to—
18	"(i) non-profit parent organizations
19	that are located in rural and urban areas
20	in the State where the percentage of stu-
21	dents from families at or below the poverty
22	line is greater than the median, as deter-
23	mined by the State; and
24	"(ii) areas with high school dropout
25	rates, high percentages of limited English

proficient students, or schools identified
 for school improvement or corrective action
 under section 1116(c).

4 "SEC. 1404. TECHNICAL ASSISTANCE.

5 "The Secretary shall provide technical assistance, by
6 grant or contract, for the establishment, development, and
7 coordination of parent training, information, and support
8 programs and parental information and resource centers.
9 "SEC. 1405. REPORTS.

10 "(a) INFORMATION.—Each organization or consor-11 tium receiving assistance under this part shall submit to 12 the Secretary, on an annual basis, information concerning 13 the parental information and resource centers assisted 14 under this part, including—

15 "(1) the number of parents (including the num16 ber of minority and limited English proficient par17 ents) who receive information and training;

18 "(2) the types and modes of training, informa-19 tion, and support provided under this part;

"(3) the strategies used to reach and serve parents of minority and limited English proficient children, parents with limited literacy skills, and other
parents in need of the services provided under this
part;

"(4) the parental involvement policies and practices used by the center and an evaluation of whether such policies and practices are effective in improving home-school communication, student achievement, student and school performance, and parental
involvement in school planning, review, and improvement; and

8 "(5) the effectiveness of the activities that local 9 educational agencies and schools are carrying out 10 with regard to parental involvement and other activi-11 ties assisted under this Act that lead to improved 12 student achievement and improved student and 13 school performance.

14 "(b) DISSEMINATION.—The Secretary annually shall
15 disseminate, widely to the public and to Congress, the in16 formation that each organization or consortium submits
17 under subsection (a) to the Secretary.

18 "SEC. 1406. GENERAL PROVISIONS.

"Notwithstanding any other provision of this part—
"(1) no person, including a parent who educates a child at home, a public school parent, or a
private school parent, shall be required to participate
in any program of parent education or developmental screening pursuant to the provisions of this
part; and

1 "(2) no program or center assisted under this 2 part shall take any action that infringes in any man-3 ner on the right of a parent to direct the education of their children.". 4 **III—NATIONAL PRIOR-**TITLE 5 **ITIES WITH PROVEN EFFEC-**6 TIVENESS 7 Subtitle A—Qualified Teacher in 8 **Every Classroom** 9 10 SEC. 301. TEACHER QUALITY. 11 (a) IN GENERAL.—Title II (20 U.S.C. 6601 et seq.) 12 is amended by striking the title heading and all that follows through the end of part A and inserting the following: 13 **"TITLE II—QUALIFIED TEACHER** 14 **IN EVERY CLASSROOM** 15 **"PART A—TEACHER QUALITY** 16 17 "SEC. 2001. PURPOSES. 18 "The purposes of this part are the following: 19 "(1) To improve student achievement in order 20 to help every student meet State content and stu-21 dent performance standards. 22 "(2) To— 23 "(A) enable States, local educational agen-24 cies, and schools to improve the quality and 25 success of the teaching force by providing all

1	teachers, including beginning and veteran
2	teachers, with the support those teachers need
3	to succeed and stay in teaching, by providing
4	professional development and mentoring pro-
5	grams for teachers, by offering incentives for
6	additional qualified individuals to go into teach-
7	ing, by reducing out-of-field placement of teach-
8	ers, and by reducing the number of teachers
9	with emergency credentials; and
10	"(B) hold the States, agencies, and schools
11	accountable for such improvements.
12	"(3) To support State and local efforts to re-
13	cruit qualified teachers to address teacher shortages,
14	particularly in communities with the greatest need.
15	"(4) To ensure that underqualified and inexpe-
16	rienced teachers do not teach higher percentages of
17	low-income students and minority students than
18	other students.
19	"SEC. 2002. DEFINITIONS.
20	"In this part:
21	"(1) BEGINNING TEACHER.—The term 'begin-
22	ning teacher' means a fully qualified teacher who
23	has taught for 3 years or less.
24	"(2) CORE ACADEMIC SUBJECTS.—The term
25	'core academic subjects' means—

1	"(A) mathematics;
2	"(B) science;
3	"(C) reading (or language arts) and
4	English;
5	"(D) social studies (consisting of history,
6	civics, government, geography, and economics);
7	"(E) foreign languages; and
8	"(F) fine arts (consisting of music, dance,
9	drama, and the visual arts).
10	"(3) Covered recruitment.—The term 'cov-
11	ered recruitment' means activities described in sec-
12	tion 2017(c).
13	"(4) Fully qualified.—
14	"(A) IN GENERAL.—The term 'fully quali-
15	fied', used with respect to a teacher, means a
16	teacher who—
17	"(i)(I) is certified or licensed and has
18	demonstrated the academic subject knowl-
19	edge, teaching knowledge, and teaching
20	skills necessary to teach effectively in the
21	academic subject in which the teacher
22	teaches, according to the standards de-
23	scribed in subparagraph (B) or (C), as ap-
24	propriate; and

"(II) shall not be a teacher for whom 1 2 State certification or licensing require-3 ments have been waived or who is teaching 4 under an emergency; or "(ii) meets the standards of the Na-5 6 tional Board for Professional Teaching 7 Standards. 8 "(B) ELEMENTARY SCHOOL INSTRUC-9 TIONAL STAFF.—For purposes of complying 10 with subparagraph (A)(i), each elementary 11 school teacher (other than a middle school 12 teacher) in the State shall, at a minimum— 13 "(i) have State certification or a State 14 license to teach (which may include certifi-15 cation or licensing obtained through alter-16 native routes); and 17 "(ii) hold a bachelor's degree and 18 demonstrate the academic subject knowl-19 edge, teaching knowledge, and teaching 20 skills required to teach effectively in read-

ing, writing, mathematics, social studies,

"(C) MIDDLE SCHOOL AND SECONDARY

science, and other academic subjects.

SCHOOL INSTRUCTIONAL STAFF.—For purposes

of complying with subparagraph (A)(i), each

122

21

22

23

24

1	middle school or secondary school teacher in the
2	State shall, at a minimum—
3	"(i) have State certification or a State
4	license to teach (which may include certifi-
5	cation or licensing obtained through alter-
6	native routes); and
7	"(ii) hold a bachelor's degree or high-
8	er degree and demonstrate a high level of
9	competence in all academic subjects in
10	which the teacher teaches through—
11	"(I) achievement of a high level
12	of performance on rigorous academic
13	subject tests;
14	"(II) completion of an academic
15	major (or courses totaling an equiva-
16	lent number of credit hours) in each
17	of the academic subjects in which the
18	teacher teaches; or
19	"(III) for a teacher hired prior to
20	the date of enactment of the Edu-
21	cational Opportunities Act, completion
22	of appropriate coursework for mastery
23	of such academic subjects.
24	"(5) HIGH-POVERTY.—The term 'high-poverty',
25	used with respect to a school, means a school that

1	serves a high number or percentage of children from
2	families with incomes below the poverty line, as de-
3	termined by the State in which the school is located.
4	"(6) HIGH-POVERTY LOCAL EDUCATIONAL
5	AGENCY.—The term 'high-poverty local educational
6	agency' means a local educational agency for which
7	the number of children served by the agency who are
8	age 5 through 17, and from families with incomes
9	below the poverty line—
10	"(A) is not less than 20 percent of the
11	number of all children served by the agency; or
12	"(B) is more than 10,000.
13	"(7) INSTITUTION OF HIGHER EDUCATION.—
14	The term 'institution of higher education'—
15	"(A) has the meaning given the term in
16	section 101(a) of the Higher Education Act of
17	1965; and
18	"(B) if such an institution prepares teach-
19	ers and receives Federal funds, means such an
20	institution that—
21	"(i) is in full compliance with the re-
22	quirements of section 207 of the Higher
23	Education Act of 1965; and

	1-0
1	"(ii) does not have a teacher prepara-
2	tion program identified by a State as low-
3	performing.
4	"(8) Low-performing school.—The term
5	'low-performing school' means—
6	"(A) a school identified by a local edu-
7	cational agency for school improvement under
8	section 1116(c); or
9	"(B) a school in which the great majority
10	of students, as determined by the State in
11	which the school is located, fail to meet State
12	student performance standards based on assess-
13	ments the local educational agency is using
14	under part A of title I.
15	"(9) MENTORING.—The term 'mentoring'
16	means activities that—
17	"(A) consist of structured guidance and
18	regular and ongoing support for beginning
19	teachers, that—
20	"(i) is designed to help the teachers
21	continue to improve their practice of teach-
22	ing and to develop their instructional skills;
23	and
24	"(ii)(I) as part of a multiyear, devel-
25	opmental induction process;

"(II) involves the assistance of a men-1 2 tor teacher and other appropriate individ-3 uals from a school, local educational agen-4 cy, or institution of higher education; and 5 "(III) may include coaching, class-6 room observation, team teaching, and re-7 duced teaching loads; and "(B) may include the establishment of a 8 9 partnership by a local educational agency with 10 an institution of higher education, another local 11 educational agency, teacher organization, or an-12 other organization, for the purpose of carrying 13 out the activities described in subparagraph 14 (A). "(10) MENTOR TEACHER.—The term 'mentor 15 16 teacher' means a fully qualified teacher who—

17 "(A) is a highly competent classroom
18 teacher who is formally selected and trained to
19 work effectively with beginning teachers (includ20 ing corps members described in section 2018);

21 "(B) is full-time, and is assigned and
22 qualified to teach in the content area or grade
23 level in which a beginning teacher (including a
24 corps member described in section 2018), to

1	whom the teacher provides mentoring, intends
2	to teach;
3	"(C) has been consistently effective in
4	helping diverse groups of students make sub-
5	stantial achievement gains; and
6	"(D) has been selected to provide men-
7	toring through a peer review process that uses,
8	as the primary selection criterion for the proc-
9	ess, the teacher's ability to help students
10	achieve academic gains.
11	"(11) POVERTY LINE.—The term 'poverty line'
12	means the income official poverty line (as defined by
13	the Office of Management and Budget, and revised
14	annually in accordance with section $673(2)$ of the
15	Community Services Block Grant Act (42 U.S.C.
16	9902(2))) applicable to a family of the size involved.
17	"(12) Professional development.—The
18	term 'professional development' means activities that
19	are—
20	"(A)(i) an integral part of broad
21	schoolwide and districtwide educational im-
22	provement plans and enhance the ability of
23	teachers and other staff to help all students, in-
24	cluding females, students with disabilities, stu-
25	dents with limited English proficiency, and stu-

1	dents who have economic and educational dis-
2	advantages, meet high State and local content
3	and student performance standards;
4	"(ii) sustained, intensive, school-embedded,
5	tied to State standards, and of high quality and
6	sufficient duration to have a positive and last-
7	ing impact on classroom instruction (not one-
8	time workshops); and
9	"(iii) based on the best available research
10	on teaching and learning; and
11	"(B) described in subparagraphs (A)
12	through (F) of section $2017(a)(1)$.
13	"(13) Recruitment activities.—The term
14	'recruitment activities' means activities carried out
15	through a teacher corps program as described in sec-
16	tion 2018 to attract highly qualified individuals, in-
17	cluding individuals taking nontraditional routes to
18	teaching, to enter teaching and support the individ-
19	uals during necessary certification and licensure ac-
20	tivities.
21	"(14) Recruitment partnership.—The term
22	'recruitment partnership' means a partnership de-
23	scribed in section $2015(b)(2)$.

"SEC. 2003. AUTHORIZATION OF APPROPRIATIONS.
"There are authorized to be appropriated to carry out
this part—
((1) \$2,000,000,000 for fiscal year 2001, of
which—
"(A) \$1,730,000,000 shall be made avail-
able to carry out subpart 1; and
"(B) $$270,000,000$ shall be made available
to carry out subpart 2, of which—
"(i) \$120,000,000 shall be made
available to carry out chapter 1 of subpart
2;
"(ii) \$25,000,000 shall be made avail-
able to carry out chapter 2 of subpart 2;
"(iii) \$75,000,000 shall be made
available to carry out chapter 3 of subpart
2; and
"(iv) \$50,000,000 shall be made avail-
able to carry out chapter 4 of subpart 2;
and
((2) such sums as may be necessary for each
of fiscal years 2002 through 2005.

1 "Subpart 1—Grants to States and Local Educational 2 Agencies 3 "Chapter 1—Grants and Activities 4 "SEC. 2011. ALLOTMENTS TO STATES. 5 "(a) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary is authorized to make grants to eligible State educational agencies for the 6 7 improvement of teaching and learning through sustained and intensive high-quality professional development, men-8 9 toring, and recruitment activities (and covered recruit-

11 State and local levels. Each grant shall consist of the allot-12 ment determined for the State under subsection (b).

ment, at the election of a local educational agency) at the

13 "(b) DETERMINATION OF AMOUNT OF ALLOT-14 MENT.—

15 "(1) RESERVATION OF FUNDS.—

16 "(A) IN GENERAL.—From the total
17 amount made available to carry out this sub18 part under section 2003(1) for any fiscal year,
19 the Secretary shall reserve—

20 "(i) ½ of 1 percent for allotments for
21 the outlying areas to be distributed among
22 those outlying areas on the basis of their
23 relative need, as determined by the Sec24 retary, for professional development and
25 mentoring and recruitment activities car-

130

1	ried out in accordance with the purposes of
2	this part; and
3	"(ii) $\frac{1}{2}$ of 1 percent for the Secretary
4	of the Interior for programs carried out in
5	accordance with the purposes of this part
6	to provide professional development and
7	mentoring and recruitment activities for
8	teachers and other staff in schools oper-
9	ated or funded by the Bureau of Indian
10	Affairs.
11	"(B) LIMITATION.—Notwithstanding sub-
12	paragraph (A), the Secretary shall not reserve,
13	for either the outlying areas under subpara-
14	graph (A)(i) or the schools operated or funded
15	by the Bureau of Indian Affairs under subpara-
16	graph (A)(ii), more than the amount reserved
17	for those areas or schools for fiscal year 2000
18	under the authority described in paragraph
19	(2)(A)(i).
20	"(2) STATE ALLOTMENTS.—
21	"(A) Hold harmless.—
22	"(i) IN GENERAL.—Subject to sub-
23	paragraph (B), from the total amount
24	made available to carry out this subpart
25	for any fiscal year and not reserved under

1	paragraph (1), the Secretary shall allot to
2	each of the 50 States, the District of Co-
3	lumbia, and the Commonwealth of Puerto
4	Rico an amount equal to the amount that
5	the State received for fiscal year 2000
6	under section 2202(b) of this Act (as in ef-
7	fect on the day before the date of enact-
8	ment of the Educational Opportunities
9	Act).
10	"(ii) RATABLE REDUCTION.—If the
11	total amount made available to carry out
12	this subpart for any fiscal year and not re-
13	served under paragraph (1) is insufficient
14	to pay the full amounts that all States are
15	eligible to receive under clause (i) for any
16	fiscal year, the Secretary shall ratably re-
17	duce such amounts for such fiscal year.
18	"(B) Allotment of additional
19	FUNDS.—
20	"(i) IN GENERAL.—Subject to clause
21	(ii), for any fiscal year for which the total
22	amount made available to carry out this
23	subpart and not reserved under paragraph
24	(1) exceeds the total amount made avail-
25	able to the 50 States, the District of Co-

	100
1	lumbia, and the Commonwealth of Puerto
2	Rico for fiscal year 2000 under the author-
3	ity described in subparagraph (A)(i), the
4	Secretary shall allot to each of those States
5	the sum of—
6	"(I) an amount that bears the
7	same relationship to 40 percent of the
8	excess amount as the number of indi-
9	viduals age 5 through 17 in the State,
10	as determined by the Secretary on the
11	basis of the most recent satisfactory
12	data, bears to the number of those in-
13	dividuals in all such States, as so de-
14	termined; and
15	"(II) an amount that bears the
16	same relationship to 60 percent of the
17	excess amount as the number of indi-
18	viduals age 5 through 17 from fami-
19	lies with incomes below the poverty
20	line in the State, as determined by the
21	Secretary on the basis of the most re-
22	cent satisfactory data, bears to the
23	number of those individuals in all
24	such States, as so determined.

1	"(ii) Exception.—No State receiving
2	an allotment under clause (i) may receive
3	less than $\frac{1}{2}$ of 1 percent of the total ex-
4	cess amount allotted under clause (i) for a
5	fiscal year.
6	"(3) REALLOTMENT.—If any State described in
7	paragraph (2) does not apply for an allotment under
8	paragraph (2) for any fiscal year, the Secretary shall
9	reallot such amount to the remaining such States in
10	accordance with paragraph (2) .
11	"SEC. 2012. STATE APPLICATIONS.
12	"(a) Applications Required.—
13	"(1) IN GENERAL.—Each State desiring to re-
14	ceive a grant under this subpart shall submit an ap-
15	plication to the Secretary at such time, in such man-
16	ner, and containing such information as the Sec-
17	retary may reasonably require.
18	"(2) DEVELOPMENT.—The State educational
19	agency shall develop the State application—
20	"(A) in consultation with the State agency
21	for higher education, community-based and
22	other nonprofit organizations, and institutions
23	of higher education; and

1	"(B) with the extensive participation of
2	teachers, teacher educators, school administra-
3	tors, and content specialists.
4	"(b) CONTENTS.—Each such application shall
5	include—
6	"(1) a description of the State's shortages of
7	fully qualified teachers relating to high-poverty
8	school districts and high-need academic subjects (as
9	such districts or subjects are determined by the
10	State);
11	((2) an assessment of the need for professional
12	development for veteran teachers in the State and
13	the need for strong mentoring programs for begin-
14	ning teachers that is—
15	"(A) developed with the involvement of
16	teachers; and
17	"(B) based on student achievement data in
18	the core academic subjects and other indicators
19	of the need for professional development and
20	mentoring programs;
21	"(3) a description of how the State educational
22	agency will use funds made available under this part
23	to improve the quality of the State's teaching force,
24	eliminate the use of out-of-field placement of teach-
25	ers, and eliminate the use of teachers hired with

1	emergency or other provisional credentials by setting
2	numerical, annual improvement goals, and meet the
3	requirements of this section;
4	"(4) a description of how the State educational
5	agency will align activities assisted under this sub-
6	part with State content and student performance
7	standards, and State assessments by setting numer-
8	ical, annual improvement goals;
9	"(5) a description of how the State educational
10	agency will coordinate activities funded under this
11	subpart with professional development and men-
12	toring and recruitment activities that are supported
13	with funds from other relevant Federal and non-
14	Federal programs;
15	"(6) a plan, developed with the extensive par-
16	ticipation of teachers, for addressing long-term
17	teacher recruitment, retention, and professional de-
18	velopment and mentoring needs, which may
19	include—
20	"(A) providing technical assistance to help
21	school districts reform hiring and employment
22	practices to improve the recruitment and reten-
23	tion of fully qualified teachers, especially with
24	respect to high-poverty schools; or

1	"(B) establishing State or regional part-
2	nerships to address teacher shortages;
3	"(7) a description of how the State educational
4	agency will assist local educational agencies in imple-
5	menting effective and sustained professional develop-
6	ment and mentoring activities and high-quality re-
7	cruitment activities under this part;
8	"(8) an assurance that the State will consist-
9	ently monitor the progress of each local educational
10	agency and school in the State in achieving the goals
11	specified in the information submitted under para-
12	graphs (1) through (7) ;
13	"(9) a description of how the State educational
14	agency will work with recipients of grants awarded
15	for recruitment activities under section $2015(b)$ to
16	ensure that recruits who successfully complete a
17	teacher corps program will be certified or licensed;
18	and
19	((10) the assurances and description referred
20	to in section 2021.
21	"(c) APPROVAL.—The Secretary shall, using a peer-
22	review process, approve a State application if the applica-
23	tion meets the requirements of this section and holds rea-
24	sonable promise of achieving the purposes of this part.

•S 7 IS

1 "SEC. 2013. STATE USE OF FUNDS.

2 "(a) IN GENERAL.—Of the funds allotted to a State
3 under section 2011 for a fiscal year—

138

4 "(1) not more than 6 percent shall be used by 5 the State educational agency to carry out State ac-6 tivities described in section 2014, or for the adminis-7 tration of this subpart (other than the administra-8 tion of section 2019 but including the administration 9 of State activities under chapter 2), except that not 10 more than 3 percent of the allotted funds may be 11 used for the administration of this subpart;

"(2) 60 percent shall be used by the State educational agency to provide grants to local educational agencies under section 2015(a) for professional development and mentoring (except as provided in section 2017(c));

17 "(3) 30 percent shall be used by the State edu-18 cational agency—

"(A) except as provided in subparagraph
(B), to provide grants to recruitment partnerships under section 2015(b) for recruitment activities; or

23 "(B) if the State educational agency deter24 mines that all elementary school and secondary
25 school teachers in the State that are teaching
26 core academic subjects are fully qualified, to

1	provide the grants described in paragraph (2) ;
2	and
3	"(4) 4 percent (or 4 percent of the amount the
4	State would have been allotted if the appropriation
5	for this subpart were \$1,730,000,000, whichever is
6	greater) shall be used by the State agency for higher
7	education to provide grants to partnerships under
8	section 2019.
9	"(b) Priority for Professional Development
10	and Mentoring in Mathematics and Science.—
11	"(1) Priority.—
12	"(A) Appropriations of not more
13	THAN \$300,000,000.—Except as provided in sec-
14	tion 2017(c), for any fiscal year for which the
15	appropriation for this subpart is \$300,000,000
16	or less, each State educational agency that re-
17	ceives funds under this subpart, working jointly
18	with the State agency for higher education,
19	shall ensure that all funds received under this
20	subpart are used for—
21	"(i) professional development and
22	mentoring in mathematics and science that
23	is aligned with State content and student
24	performance standards; and

1	"(ii) recruitment activities to attract
2	fully qualified math and science teachers to
3	high-poverty schools.

4 "(B) APPROPRIATION OF MORE THAN 5 \$300,000,000.—Except as provided in section 6 2017(c), for any fiscal year for which the ap-7 propriation for this subpart is greater than \$300,000,000, the State educational agency 8 9 and the State agency for higher education shall 10 jointly ensure that the total amount of funds 11 that the agencies receive under this subpart and 12 that the agencies use for activities described in 13 subparagraph (A) is at least as great as the al-14 lotment the State would have received if that 15 appropriation had been \$300,000,000.

16 "(2) INTERDISCIPLINARY ACTIVITIES.—A State 17 may use funds received under this subpart for activi-18 ties that focus on more than 1 core academic sub-19 ject, and apply the funds toward meeting the re-20 quirements of paragraph (1), if the activities include 21 a strong focus on improving instruction in mathe-22 matics or science.

23 "(3) ADDITIONAL FUNDS.—Except as provided
24 in section 2017(c), each State educational agency
25 that receives funds under this subpart and the State

1	agency for higher education shall jointly ensure that
2	any portion of the funds that exceeds the amount re-
3	quired by paragraph (1) to be spent on activities de-
4	scribed in paragraph (1)(A) is used to provide—
5	"(A) professional development and men-
6	toring in 1 or more of the core academic sub-
7	jects that is aligned with State content and stu-
8	dent performance standards; and
9	"(B) recruitment activities involving teach-
10	ers of 1 or more of the core academic subjects.
11	"SEC. 2014. STATE LEVEL ACTIVITIES.
12	"(a) ACTIVITIES.—Each State educational agency
13	that receives a grant described in section 2011 shall use
14	the funds made available under section $2013(a)(1)$ to
15	carry out statewide strategies and activities to improve
16	teacher quality, including—
17	"(1) establishing, expanding, or improving al-
18	ternative routes to State certification or licensing of
19	teachers, for highly qualified individuals with a bac-
20	calaureate degree, mid-career professionals from
21	other occupations, or paraprofessionals, that are at
22	least as rigorous as the State's standards for initial
23	certification or licensing of teachers;

25 to evaluate the effectiveness of professional develop-

1	ment and mentoring and recruitment activities in
2	improving teacher quality, skills, and content knowl-
3	edge, and the impact of the professional development
4	and mentoring and recruitment activities on increas-
5	ing student academic achievement and student per-
6	formance with performance measures drawn from
7	assessments that objectively measure student
8	achievement against State performance standards;
9	"(3) funding projects to promote reciprocity of
10	teacher certification or licensure between or among
11	States;
12	"(4) providing assistance to local educational
13	agencies to reduce out-of-field placements and the
14	use of emergency credentials;
15	((5) supporting certification by the National
16	Board for Professional Teaching Standards of teach-
17	ers who are teaching or will teach in high-poverty
18	schools;
19	"(6) providing assistance to local educational
20	agencies in implementing effective programs of re-
21	cruitment activities, and professional development
22	and mentoring, including supporting efforts to en-
23	courage and train teachers to become mentor teach-
24	ers;

"(7) increasing the rigor and quality of State
 certification and licensure tests for individuals enter ing the field of teaching, including subject matter
 tests for elementary, middle and secondary school
 teachers; and

6 "(8) implementing teacher recognition pro-7 grams.

8 "(b) COORDINATION.—A State that receives a grant 9 to carry out this subpart and a grant under section 202 10 of the Higher Education Act of 1965 shall coordinate the 11 activities carried out under this section and the activities 12 carried out under that section 202.

13 "SEC. 2015. GRANTS TO LOCAL EDUCATIONAL AGENCIES.

14 "(a) GRANTS FOR PROFESSIONAL DEVELOPMENT15 AND MENTORING ACTIVITIES.—

"(1) IN GENERAL.—The State educational 16 17 agency of a State that receives a grant described in 18 section 2011 shall use the funds made available 19 under section 2013(a)(2) (and any funds made 20 available under section 2013(a)(3)(B)) to make 21 grants to eligible local educational agencies, from al-22 locations made under paragraph (2), to carry out 23 the activities described in section 2017(a) (except as 24 provided in section 2017(c)).

1 "(2) ALLOCATIONS.—The State educational 2 agency shall allocate to each eligible local edu-3 cational agency the sum of—

"(A) an amount that bears the same rela-4 5 tionship to 20 percent of the funds described in 6 paragraph (1) as the number of individuals en-7 rolled in public and private nonprofit elemen-8 tary schools and secondary schools in the geo-9 graphic area served by the agency bears to the 10 number of those individuals in the geographic 11 areas served by all the local educational agen-12 cies in the State; and

13 "(B) an amount that bears the same rela-14 tionship to 80 percent of the funds as the num-15 ber of individuals age 5 through 17 from fami-16 lies with incomes below the poverty line, in the 17 geographic area served by the agency, as deter-18 mined by the Secretary on the basis of the most 19 recent satisfactory data, bears to the number of 20 those individuals in the geographic areas served 21 by all the local educational agencies in the 22 State, as so determined.

23 "(3) ELIGIBILITY.—To be eligible to receive a
24 grant from a State educational agency under this
subsection, a local educational agency shall serve
schools that include—
"(A) high-poverty schools;
"(B) schools that need support for improv-
ing teacher quality based on low achievement of
students served;
"(C) schools that have low teacher reten-
tion rates;
"(D) schools that need to improve or ex-
pand the knowledge and skills of new and vet-
eran teachers in high-priority content areas;
"(E) schools that have high out-of-field
placement rates; or
"(F) high-poverty schools that have been
identified for improvement in accordance with
section 1116.
"(4) Equitable geographic distribu-
TION.—A State educational agency shall ensure an
equitable distribution of grants under this subsection
among eligible local educational agencies serving
urban and rural areas.
"(b) Grants for Recruitment Activities.—
"(1) IN GENERAL.—The State educational
agency of a State that receives a grant under section
2011 shall use the funds made available under sec-

1	tion 2013(a)(3)(A) to make grants to eligible re-
2	cruitment partnerships, on a competitive basis, to
3	carry out the recruitment activities and meet re-
4	quirements described in section 2017(b).
5	"(2) ELIGIBILITY.—
6	"(A) IN GENERAL.—To be eligible to re-
7	ceive a grant from a State educational agency
8	under this subsection, a recruitment
9	partnership—
10	"(i) shall include an eligible local edu-
11	cational agency, or a consortium of eligible
12	local educational agencies;
13	"(ii) shall include an institution of
14	higher education, a tribal college, or a
15	community college; and
16	"(iii) may include other members,
17	such as a nonprofit organization or profes-
18	sional education organization.
19	"(B) ELIGIBLE LOCAL EDUCATIONAL
20	AGENCY.—In subparagraph (A), the term 'eligi-
21	ble local educational agency' means a local edu-
22	cational agency that receives assistance under
23	part A of title I, and meets any additional eligi-
24	bility criteria that the appropriate State edu-
25	cational agency may establish.

"(3) EQUITABLE GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBU TION.—A State educational agency shall ensure an
 equitable distribution of grants under this subsection
 among eligible recruitment partnerships serving
 urban and rural areas.

6 "SEC. 2016. LOCAL APPLICATIONS.

7 "(a) IN GENERAL.—A local educational agency or a 8 recruitment partnership seeking to receive a grant from 9 a State under section 2015 to carry out activities de-10 scribed in section 2017 shall submit an application to the 11 State at such time, in such manner, and containing such 12 information as the State may reasonably require.

"(b) CONTENTS RELATING TO PROFESSIONAL DEVELOPMENT AND MENTORING ACTIVITIES.—If the local
educational agency seeks a grant under section 2015(a)
to carry out activities described in section 2017(a), the
local application described in subsection (a) shall include,
at a minimum, the following:

"(1) A description of how the local educational
agency intends to use the funds provided through
the grant to carry out activities that meet requirements described in section 2017(a).

23 "(2) An assurance that the local educational
24 agency will target the funds to high-poverty, low-per-

1	forming schools served by the local educational agen-
2	cy that—
3	"(A) have the lowest proportions of quali-
4	fied teachers;
5	"(B) are identified for school improvement
6	and corrective action under section 1116; or
7	"(C) are identified for school improvement
8	in accordance with other measures of school
9	quality as determined and documented by the
10	local educational agency.
11	"(3) A description of how the local educational
12	agency will coordinate professional development and
13	mentoring activities described in section 2017(a)
14	with professional development and mentoring activi-
15	ties provided through other Federal, State, and local
16	programs, including programs authorized under—
17	"(A) titles I, IV, and V, and part A of title
18	VII; and
19	"(B) where applicable, the Individuals with
20	Disabilities Education Act, the Carl D. Perkins
21	Vocational and Technical Education Act of
22	1998, and title II of the Higher Education Act
23	of 1965.
24	"(4) A description of how the local educational
25	agency will integrate funds received to carry out ac-

tivities described in section 2017(a) with funds received under title V that are used for professional development and mentoring in order to carry out professional development and mentoring activities that—

6 "(A) train teachers, paraprofessionals,
7 counselors, pupil services personnel, administra8 tors, and other school staff, including school li9 brary media specialists, in how to use tech10 nology to improve learning and teaching; and

"(B) take into special consideration the
different learning needs for, and exposures to,
technology for all students, including females,
students with disabilities, students with limited
English proficiency, and students who have economic and educational disadvantages.

"(5) A description of how the local application
was developed with extensive participation of teachers, paraprofessionals, principals, and parents.

"(6) A description of how the professional development and mentoring activities described in section 2017(a) will address the ongoing professional
development and mentoring of teachers, paraprofessionals, counselors, pupil services personnel, admin-

istrators, and other school staff, including school li brary media specialists.

"(7) A description of how the professional de-3 4 velopment and mentoring activities described in sec-5 tion 2017(a) will have a substantial, measurable, 6 and positive impact on student achievement and how 7 the activities will be used as part of a broader strat-8 egy to eliminate the achievement gap that separates 9 low-income and minority student from other stu-10 dents.

"(8) A description of how the local educational
agency will address the needs of teachers of students
with disabilities, students with limited English proficiency, and other students with special needs.

"(9) A description of how the local educational
agency will provide training to teachers to enable the
teachers to work with parents, involve parents in
their child's education, and encourage parents to become collaborators with schools in promoting their
child's education.

21 "(10) The assurances and description referred
22 to in section 2023, with respect to professional de23 velopment and mentoring activities.

24 "(c) DEVELOPMENT AND CONTENTS RELATING TO25 RECRUITMENT ACTIVITIES.—If an eligible local edu-

1 cational agency (as defined in section 2015(b)) seeks a 2 grant under section 2015(b) to carry out activities de-3 scribed in section 2017(b)— "(1) the eligible local educational agency shall 4 5 enter into a recruitment partnership, which shall 6 jointly prepare and submit the local application de-7 scribed in subsection (a); and 8 ((2)) at a minimum, the application shall 9 include-"(A) a description of how the recruitment 10 11 partnership will meet the teacher corps program 12 requirements described in section 2018; "(B) a description of the individual and 13 14 collective responsibilities of members of the re-15 cruitment partnership in meeting the require-16 ments and goals of a teacher corps program de-17 scribed in section 2018; 18 "(C) information demonstrating that the 19 State agency responsible for teacher licensure 20 or certification in the State in which a recruit-21 ment partnership is established will— 22 "(i) ensure that a corps member who 23 successfully completes a teacher corps pro-24 gram will have the academic requirements

	10-
1	necessary for initial certification or licen-
2	sure as a teacher in the State; and
3	"(ii) work with the recruitment part-
4	nership to ensure the partnership uses
5	high-quality methods and establishes high-
6	quality requirements concerning alternative
7	routes to certification or licensing, in order
8	to meet State requirements for certifi-
9	cation or licensure; and
10	"(D) the assurances and description re-
11	ferred to in section 2023, with respect to re-
12	cruitment activities.
13	"(d) Contents Relating to Covered Recruit-
14	MENT.—If the local educational agency seeks a grant
15	under section 2015(a) to carry out activities described in
16	section 2017(c), the local application described in sub-
17	section (a) shall include, at a minimum, a description of
18	the activities and the manner in which the activities will
19	contribute to accomplishing the objectives of section 2023,
20	and how the activities are in compliance with the require-
21	ments of this Act.

"(e) APPROVAL.—A State educational agency shall
approve a local educational agency's or recruitment partnership's application under this section only if the State
educational agency determines that the application is of

high quality and holds reasonable promise of achieving the
 purposes of this part.

3 "SEC. 2017. LOCAL ACTIVITIES.

4 "(a) PROFESSIONAL DEVELOPMENT AND MEN-5 TORING ACTIVITIES.—Except as provided in subsection 6 (c), each local educational agency receiving a grant under 7 section 2015(a) shall use the funds made available 8 through the grant to carry out activities (and only activi-9 ties) that—

"(1) are professional development activities (as
defined in section 2002(12)(A)) that—

12 "(A) improve teacher knowledge of—
13 "(i) 1 or more of the core academic
14 subjects;

15 "(ii) effective instructional strategies,
16 methods, and skills for improving student
17 achievement in core academic subjects, in18 cluding strategies for identifying and elimi19 nating gender and racial bias;

20 "(iii) the use of data and assessments
21 to inform teachers about and thereby help
22 teachers to improve classroom practice;
23 and

24 "(iv) innovative instructional meth-25 odologies designed to meet the diverse

- 1 learning needs of individual students, in-2 cluding methodologies that integrate academic and technical skills and applied 3 4 learning (such as service learning), methodologies for interactive and interdiscipli-5 6 nary team teaching, and other alternative 7 teaching strategies, such as strategies for 8 experiential learning, career-related edu-9 cation, and environmental education, that 10 integrate real world applications into the 11 core academic subjects; 12 "(B) provide teachers and paraprofes-
- sionals (and other staff as appropriate) with information on recent research findings on how
 children learn to read and with staff development on research-based instructional strategies
 for the teaching of reading;
- 18 "(C) replicate effective instructional prac19 tices that involve collaborative groups of teach20 ers and administrators from the same school or
 21 district, using strategies such as—
- 22 "(i) provision of dedicated time for
 23 collaborative lesson planning and cur24 riculum development meetings;

1	"(ii) provision of collaborative profes-
2	sional development experiences for veteran
3	teachers based on the standards in the
4	core academic subjects of the National
5	Board for Professional Teaching Stand-
6	ards;
7	"(iii) consultation with exemplary
8	teachers;
9	"(iv) provision of short-term and long-
10	term visits to classrooms and schools;
11	"(v) participation of teams of teachers
12	in summer institutes and summer immer-
13	sion activities that are focused on pre-
14	paring teachers to enable all students to
15	meet high standards in 1 or more of the
16	core academic subjects; and
17	"(vi) establishment and maintenance
18	of local professional networks that provide
19	a forum for interaction among teachers
20	and administrators and that allow for the
21	exchange of information on advances in
22	content knowledge and teaching skills;
23	"(D) provide for the participation of para-
24	professionals, pupil services personnel, and
25	other school staff;

1 "(E) include strategies for fostering mean-2 ingful parental involvement and relations with 3 parents to encourage parents to become collabo-4 rators in their children's education, for improv-5 ing classroom management and discipline, and 6 for integrating technology into a curriculum; 7 "(F) as a whole, are regularly evaluated 8 for their impact on increased teacher effective-9 ness and improved student achievement, with 10 the findings of the evaluations used to improve 11 the quality of activities described in this para-12 graph; 13 "(G) include, to the extent practicable, the 14 establishment of a partnership with an institu-15 tion of higher education, another local educational agency, a teacher organization, or an-16 17 other organization, for the purpose of carrying 18 out activities described in this paragraph; and 19 "(H) include ongoing and school-based 20 support for activities described in this para-21 graph, such as support for peer review, coach-22 ing, or study groups, and the provision of re-23 lease time as needed for the activities; 24 "(2) are mentoring activities; and

"(3) include local activities carried out under
 chapter 2.

3 "(b) RECRUITMENT ACTIVITIES.—Each recruitment
4 partnership receiving a grant under section 2015(b) shall
5 use the funds made available through the grant to carry
6 out recruitment activities (and only recruitment activities)
7 described in section 2018.

"(c) COVERED RECRUITMENT.—A local educational 8 9 agency receiving a grant under section 2015(a) for a fiscal 10 year may elect to use a portion of the funds made available through the grant, but not more than the agency's share 11 12 of 10 percent of the funds allotted to the State involved 13 under section 2011 for the fiscal year, to carry out recruitment (including recruitment through the use of signing 14 15 bonuses and other financial incentives) and hiring of fully 16 qualified teachers.

17 "SEC. 2018. RECRUITMENT ACTIVITIES THROUGH A TEACH18 ER CORPS PROGRAM.

19 "(a) TEACHER CORPS PROGRAM REQUIREMENTS.—
20 "(1) RECRUITMENT.—A recruitment partner21 ship that receives a grant under section 2015(b)
22 shall broadly recruit and screen for a teacher corps
23 a highly qualified pool of candidates who dem24 onstrate the potential to become effective teachers.
25 Each candidate shall meet—

"(A) standards to ensure that— 1 "(i) each corps member possesses ap-2 propriate, high-level credentials and pre-3 4 sents the likelihood of becoming an effec-5 tive teacher; and "(ii) each group of corps members in-6 7 cludes people who have expertise in aca-8 demic subjects and otherwise meet the spe-9 cific needs of the district to be served; and 10 "(B) any additional standard that the re-11 cruitment partnership establishes to enhance 12 the quality and diversity of candidates and to 13 meet the academic and grade level needs of the 14 partnership. 15 (2)Required CURRICULUM AND PLACE-MENT.—Members of the recruitment partnership 16 17 shall work together to plan and develop a program 18 that includes— "(A) a rigorous curriculum that includes a 19 20 preservice training program (incorporating in-21 novative approaches to preservice training, such 22 as distance learning), for a period not to exceed 23 1 year, that provides corps members with the

skills and knowledge necessary to become effec-

158

25 tive teachers, by—

24

1	"(i) requiring completed course work
2	in basic areas of teaching, such as prin-
3	ciples of learning and child development,
4	effective teaching strategies, assessments,
5	and classroom management, and in the
6	pedagogy related to the academic subjects
7	in which a corps member intends to teach;
8	"(ii) providing extensive preparation
9	in the pedagogy of reading to corps mem-
10	bers, including preparation components
11	that focus on—
12	"(I) understanding the psy-
13	chology of reading, and human growth
14	and development;
15	"(II) understanding the structure
16	of the English language; and
17	"(III) learning and applying the
18	best teaching methods to all aspects
19	of reading instruction;
20	"(iii) providing training in the use of
21	technology as a tool to enhance a corps
22	member's effectiveness as a teacher and
23	improve the achievement of the corps mem-
24	ber's students; and

1	"(iv) focusing on the teaching skills
2	and knowledge that corps members need to
3	enable all students to meet the State's
4	highest challenging content and student
5	performance standards;
6	"(B) placement of a corps member with
7	the local educational agency participating in the
8	recruitment partnership, in a teaching intern-
9	ship that—
10	"(i) includes intensive mentoring;
11	"(ii) provides a reduced teaching load;
12	and
13	"(iii) provides regular opportunities
14	for the corps member to co-teach with a
15	mentor teacher, observe other teachers,
16	and be observed and coached by other
17	teachers;
18	"(C) individualized inservice training over
19	the course of the corps member's first 2 years
20	of full-time teaching that provides—
21	"(i) high-quality professional develop-
22	ment, coordinated jointly by members of
23	the recruitment partnership, and the
24	course work necessary to provide additional

1	or supplementary knowledge to meet the
2	specific needs of the corps member; and
3	"(ii) ongoing mentoring by a teacher
4	who meets the criteria for a mentor teach-
5	er described in paragraph (4)(B), including
6	the requirements of section $2002(10)$; and
7	"(D) collaboration between the recruitment
8	partnership, and local community student and
9	parent groups, to assist corps members in en-
10	hancing their understanding of the community
11	in which the members are placed.
12	"(3) EVALUATION.—A recruitment partnership
13	shall evaluate a corps member's progress in course
14	study and classroom practice at regular intervals.
15	Each recruitment partnership shall have a formal
16	process to identify corps members who seem unlikely
17	to become effective teachers and terminate their par-
18	ticipation in the program.
19	"(4) Mentor teachers.—
20	"(A) IN GENERAL.—A recruitment part-
21	nership shall develop a plan for the program,
22	which shall include strategies for identifying, re-
23	cruiting, training, and providing ongoing sup-
24	port to individuals who will serve as mentor
25	teachers to corps members.

161

1	"(B) MENTOR TEACHER REQUIRE-
2	MENTS.—The plan described in subparagraph
3	(A) shall specify the criteria that the recruit-
4	ment partnership will use to identify and select
5	mentor teachers and, at a minimum, shall—
6	"(i) require a mentor teacher to meet
7	the requirements of section $2002(10)$; and
8	"(ii) require that consideration be
9	given to teachers with national board cer-
10	tification.
11	"(C) Compensation.—The plan shall
12	specify the compensation—
13	"(i) for mentor teachers, including
14	monetary compensation, release time, or a
15	reduced work load to ensure that mentor
16	teachers can provide ongoing support for
17	corps members; and
18	"(ii) for corps members, including sal-
19	ary levels and the stipends, if any, that will
20	be provided during a corps member's
21	preservice training.
22	"(5) Assurances.—The plan shall include as-
23	surances that—

1	"(A) a corps member will be assigned to
2	teach only academic subjects and grade levels
3	for which the member is fully qualified;
4	"(B) corps members, to the extent prac-
5	ticable, will be placed in schools with teams of
6	corps members; and
7	"(C) every mentor teacher will be provided
8	sufficient time to meet the needs of the corps
9	members assigned to the mentor teacher.
10	"(b) Corps Member Qualifications.—
11	"(1) Candidates intending to teach in el-
12	EMENTARY SCHOOLS.—At a minimum, to be accept-
13	ed by a teacher corps program, a candidate who in-
14	tends to teach at the elementary school level shall—
15	"(A) have a bachelor's degree;
16	"(B) possess an outstanding commitment
17	to working with children and youth;
18	"(C) possess a strong professional or post-
19	secondary record of achievement; and
20	"(D) pass all basic skills and subject mat-
21	ter tests required by the State for teacher cer-
22	tification or licensure.
23	"(2) CANDIDATES INTENDING TO TEACH IN
24	SECONDARY SCHOOLS.—At a minimum, to be ac-

1	cepted by a teacher corps program, a candidate who
2	intends to teach at the secondary school level shall—
3	"(A) meet the requirements described in
4	paragraph (1); and
5	"(B)(i) possess at least an academic major
6	or postsecondary degree in each academic sub-
7	ject in which the candidate intends to teach; or
8	"(ii) if the candidate did not major or earn
9	a postsecondary degree in an academic subject
10	in which the candidate intends to teach, have
11	completed a rigorous course of instruction in
12	that subject that is equivalent to having ma-
13	jored in the subject.
14	"(3) Special Rule.—Notwithstanding para-
15	graph (2)(B), the recruitment partnership may con-
16	sider the candidate to be an eligible corps member
17	and accept the candidate for a teacher corps pro-
18	gram if the candidate has worked successfully and
19	directly in a field and in a position that provided the
20	candidate with direct and substantive knowledge in
21	the academic subject in which the candidate intends
22	to teach.
23	"(c) Three-Year Commitment to Teaching in
24	ELIGIBLE DISTRICTS.—

1	"(1) IN GENERAL.—In return for acceptance to
2	a teacher corps program, a corps member shall com-
3	mit to 3 years of full-time teaching in a school or
4	district served by a local educational agency partici-
5	pating in a recruitment partnership receiving funds
6	under this subpart.
7	"(2) Reimbursement.—
8	"(A) IN GENERAL.—If a corps member
9	leaves the school district to which the corps
10	member has been assigned prior to the end of
11	the 3-year period described in paragraph (1) ,
12	the corps member shall be required to reim-
13	burse the Secretary for the amount of the Fed-
14	eral share of the cost of the corps member's
15	participation in the teacher corps program.
16	"(B) PARTNERSHIP CLAIMS.—A recruit-
17	ment partnership that provides a teacher corps
18	program to a corps member who leaves the
19	school district, as discussed in subparagraph
20	(A), may submit a claim to the corps member
21	requiring the corps member to reimburse the
22	recruitment partnership for the amount of the
23	partnership's share of the cost described in sub-
24	paragraph (A).

1	"(C) REDUCTION.—Reimbursements re-
2	quired under this paragraph may be reduced
3	proportionally based on the amount of time a
4	corps member remained in the teacher corps
5	program beyond the corps member's initial 2
6	years of service.
7	"(D) WAIVER.—The Secretary may waive
8	reimbursements required under subparagraph
9	(A) in the case of severe hardship to a corps
10	member who leaves the school district, as de-
11	scribed in subparagraph (A).
12	"(d) Federal Share; Non-Federal Share.—
13	"(1) PAYMENT OF FEDERAL SHARE.—The Sec-
14	retary shall pay to each recruitment partnership car-
15	rying out a teacher corps program under this section
16	the Federal share of the cost of the activities de-
17	scribed in the partnership's application under section
18	2016(c).
19	"(2) Non-federal share.—A recruitment
20	partnership's share of the cost of the activities de-
21	scribed in the partnership's application under section
22	2016(c)—
23	"(A) may be provided in cash or in kind,
24	fairly evaluated, including plant, equipment, or
25	services; and

1	"(B)(i) for the first year for which the
2	partnership receives assistance under this sub-
3	part, shall be not less than 10 percent;
4	"(ii) for the second such year, shall be not
5	less than 20 percent;
6	"(iii) for the third year such year, shall be
7	not less than 30 percent;
8	"(iv) for the fourth such year, shall be not
9	less than 40 percent; and
10	"(v) for the fifth such year, shall be not
11	less than 50 percent.
12	"SEC. 2019. GRANTS TO PARTNERSHIPS OF INSTITUTIONS
13	OF HIGHER EDUCATION AND LOCAL EDU-
	OF HIGHER EDUCATION AND LOCAL EDU- CATIONAL AGENCIES.
13	
13 14	CATIONAL AGENCIES.
13 14 15 16	CATIONAL AGENCIES. "(a) Administration.—A State agency for higher
13 14 15 16 17	CATIONAL AGENCIES. "(a) ADMINISTRATION.—A State agency for higher education may use, from the funds made available to the
13 14 15 16 17	CATIONAL AGENCIES. "(a) ADMINISTRATION.—A State agency for higher education may use, from the funds made available to the agency under section 2013(a)(4) for any fiscal year, not
 13 14 15 16 17 18 	CATIONAL AGENCIES. "(a) ADMINISTRATION.—A State agency for higher education may use, from the funds made available to the agency under section 2013(a)(4) for any fiscal year, not more than 3 ¹ / ₃ percent for the expenses of the agency in
 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 	CATIONAL AGENCIES. "(a) ADMINISTRATION.—A State agency for higher education may use, from the funds made available to the agency under section 2013(a)(4) for any fiscal year, not more than 3 ¹ / ₃ percent for the expenses of the agency in administering this section, including conducting evalua-
 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 	CATIONAL AGENCIES. "(a) ADMINISTRATION.—A State agency for higher education may use, from the funds made available to the agency under section 2013(a)(4) for any fiscal year, not more than 3 ¹ / ₃ percent for the expenses of the agency in administering this section, including conducting evalua- tions of activities on the performance measures described
 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 	CATIONAL AGENCIES. "(a) ADMINISTRATION.—A State agency for higher education may use, from the funds made available to the agency under section $2013(a)(4)$ for any fiscal year, not more than $3\frac{1}{3}$ percent for the expenses of the agency in administering this section, including conducting evalua- tions of activities on the performance measures described in section $2014(a)(2)$.

er education shall use the remainder of the funds, incooperation with the State educational agency, to

	100
1	make grants to (including entering into contracts or
2	cooperative agreements with) partnerships of—
3	"(A) institutions of higher education that
4	are in full compliance with all reporting require-
5	ments of title II of the Higher Education Act
6	of 1965 or nonprofit organizations of dem-
7	onstrated effectiveness in providing professional
8	development and mentoring in the core aca-
9	demic subjects; and
10	"(B) eligible local educational agencies (as
11	defined in section $2015(b)(2))$,
12	to carry out activities (and only activities) described
13	in subsection (e).
14	"(2) SIZE; DURATION.—Each grant made under
15	this section shall be—
16	"(A) in a sufficient amount to carry out
17	the objectives of this section effectively; and
18	"(B) for a period of 3 years, which the
19	State agency for higher education may extend
20	for an additional 2 years if the agency deter-
21	mines that the partnership is making substan-
22	tial progress toward meeting the specific goals
23	set out in the written agreement required in
24	subsection (c) and on the performance meas-
25	ures described in section 2014(a)(2).

1	"(3) APPLICATIONS.—To be eligible to receive a
2	grant under this section, a partnership shall submit
3	an application to the State agency for higher edu-
4	cation at such time, in such manner, and containing
5	such information as the agency may reasonably re-
6	quire.
7	"(4) Award process and basis.—The State
8	agency for higher education shall make the grants
9	on a competitive basis, using a peer review process.
10	"(5) PRIORITY.—In making the grants, the
11	State agency for higher education shall give priority
12	to partnerships submitting applications for projects
13	that focus on mentoring programs for beginning
14	teachers.
15	"(6) Considerations.—In making such a
16	grant for a partnership, the State agency for higher
17	education shall consider—
18	"(A) the need of the local educational
19	agency involved for the professional develop-
20	ment and mentoring activities proposed in the
21	application;
22	"(B) the quality of the program proposed
23	in the application and the likelihood of success
24	of the program in improving classroom instruc-
25	tion and student academic achievement; and

"(C) such other criteria as the agency
 finds to be appropriate.

3 "(c) AGREEMENTS.—

"(1) IN GENERAL.—No partnership may receive 4 5 a grant under this section unless the institution of 6 higher education or nonprofit organization involved 7 enters into a written agreement with at least 1 eligible local educational agency (as defined in section 8 9 2015(b)(2)) to provide professional development and 10 mentoring for elementary and secondary school 11 teachers in the schools served by that agency in the core academic subjects. 12

13 "(2) GOALS.—Each such agreement shall iden-14 tify specific measurable annual goals concerning how 15 the professional development and mentoring that the 16 partnership provides will enhance the ability of the 17 teachers to prepare all students to meet challenging 18 State and local content and student performance 19 standards.

20 "(d) JOINT EFFORTS WITHIN INSTITUTIONS OF
21 HIGHER EDUCATION.—Each professional development
22 and mentoring activity assisted under this section by a
23 partnership containing an institution of higher education
24 shall involve the joint effort of the institution of higher
25 education's school or department of education and the

schools or departments of the institution in the specific
 disciplines in which the professional development and men toring will be provided.

4 "(e) USES OF FUNDS.—A partnership that receives
5 funds under this section shall use the funds for activities
6 (and only for activities) that consist of—

"(1) professional development and mentoring in
the core academic subjects, aligned with State or
local content standards, for teams of teachers from
a school or school district and, where appropriate,
administrators and paraprofessionals;

12 "(2) research-based professional development
13 and mentoring programs to assist beginning teach14 ers, which may include—

15 "(A) mentoring and coaching by trained
16 mentor teachers that lasts at least 2 years;

17 "(B) team teaching with veteran teachers
18 who have a consistent record of helping their
19 students make substantial academic gains;

20 "(C) provision of time for observation of,
21 and consultation with, veteran teachers;

22 "(D) provision of reduced teaching loads;23 and

24 "(E) provision of additional time for prep-25 aration;

"(3) the provision of technical assistance to
 school and agency staff for planning, implementing,
 and evaluating professional development and men toring;

5 "(4) the provision of training for teachers to
6 help the teachers develop the skills necessary to
7 work most effectively with parents; and

8 "(5) in appropriate cases, the provision of
9 training to address areas of teacher and adminis10 trator shortages.

11 "(f) COORDINATION.—Any partnership that carries 12 out professional development and mentoring activities 13 under this section shall coordinate the activities with ac-14 tivities carried out under title II of the Higher Education 15 Act of 1965, if a local educational agency or institution 16 of higher education in the partnership is participating in 17 programs funded under that title.

18 "(g) ANNUAL REPORTS.—

"(1) IN GENERAL.—Beginning with fiscal year
2002, each partnership that receives a grant under
this section shall prepare and submit to the appropriate State agency for higher education, by a date
set by that agency, an annual report on the progress
of the partnership on the performance measures described in section 2014(a)(2).

	173
1	"(2) CONTENTS.—Each such report shall—
2	"(A) include a copy of each written agree-
3	ment required by subsection (c) that is entered
4	into by the partnership; and
5	"(B) describe how the members of the
6	partnership have collaborated to achieve the
7	specific goals set out in the agreement, and the
8	results of that collaboration.
9	"(3) COPY.—The State agency for higher edu-
10	cation shall provide the State educational agency
11	with a copy of each such report.
12	"Chapter 2—Accountability
12	Chapter 2—Accountability
12	"SEC. 2021. STATE APPLICATION ACCOUNTABILITY PROVI-
13	"SEC. 2021. STATE APPLICATION ACCOUNTABILITY PROVI-
13 14	"SEC. 2021. STATE APPLICATION ACCOUNTABILITY PROVI- SIONS.
13 14 15	"SEC. 2021. STATE APPLICATION ACCOUNTABILITY PROVI- SIONS. "(a) ASSURANCES.—Each State application sub-
13 14 15 16	 "SEC. 2021. STATE APPLICATION ACCOUNTABILITY PROVI- SIONS. "(a) ASSURANCES.—Each State application sub- mitted under section 2012 shall contain assurances that—
13 14 15 16 17	 "SEC. 2021. STATE APPLICATION ACCOUNTABILITY PROVI- SIONS. "(a) ASSURANCES.—Each State application sub- mitted under section 2012 shall contain assurances that— "(1) beginning on the date of enactment of the
 13 14 15 16 17 18 	 "SEC. 2021. STATE APPLICATION ACCOUNTABILITY PROVI- SIONS. "(a) ASSURANCES.—Each State application sub- mitted under section 2012 shall contain assurances that— "(1) beginning on the date of enactment of the Educational Opportunities Act, no school in the
 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 	 "SEC. 2021. STATE APPLICATION ACCOUNTABILITY PROVI- SIONS. "(a) ASSURANCES.—Each State application sub- mitted under section 2012 shall contain assurances that— "(1) beginning on the date of enactment of the Educational Opportunities Act, no school in the State that is served under this subpart will use
 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 	 "SEC. 2021. STATE APPLICATION ACCOUNTABILITY PROVI- SIONS. "(a) ASSURANCES.—Each State application sub- mitted under section 2012 shall contain assurances that— "(1) beginning on the date of enactment of the Educational Opportunities Act, no school in the State that is served under this subpart will use funds received under this subpart to hire a teacher
 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 	 *SEC. 2021. STATE APPLICATION ACCOUNTABILITY PROVI- SIONS. "(a) ASSURANCES.—Each State application sub- mitted under section 2012 shall contain assurances that— "(1) beginning on the date of enactment of the Educational Opportunities Act, no school in the State that is served under this subpart will use funds received under this subpart to hire a teacher who is not a fully qualified teacher; and

•S 7 IS

1 dents served under this subpart shall be a fully 2 qualified teacher. 3 "(b) WITHHOLDING.—If a State fails to meet the re-4 quirements described in subsection (a)(2) for a fiscal year 5 in which the requirements apply— 6 "(1) the Secretary shall withhold, for the fol-7 lowing fiscal year, a portion of the funds that would 8 otherwise be available to the State under section 9 2013(a)(1) for the administration of this subpart; 10 and 11 ((2)) the State shall be subject to such other 12 penalties as are provided by law for a violation of 13 this Act. 14 "(c) Assistance by State Educational Agen-15 CY.—Each State application submitted under section 16 2012 shall describe how the State educational agency will 17 help each local educational agency and school in the State develop the capacity to comply with the requirements of 18 19 this section.

20 "SEC. 2022. STATE REPORTS.

21 "(a) Report to Secretary.—

"(1) IN GENERAL.—Each State that receives
funds under this subpart shall annually prepare and
submit to the Secretary a report containing—

1	"(A) information on the activities of the
2	State under this subpart, including statewide
3	information, and information on the activities of
4	each grant recipient in the State;
5	"(B) information on the effectiveness of
6	the activities, and the progress of recipients of
7	grants under this subpart, on performance
8	measures, including measures described in sec-
9	tion $2014(a)(2)$ and goals described in para-
10	graphs (3) and (4) of section $2012(b)$; and
11	"(C) such other information as the Sec-
12	retary may reasonably require.
13	"(2) DEADLINES.—The State shall submit the
14	reports described in paragraph (1) by such deadlines
15	as the Secretary may establish.
16	"(b) PUBLIC ACCOUNTABILITY.—
17	"(1) IN GENERAL.—Each State that receives
18	funds under this subpart—
19	"(A) in the event the State provides public
20	State report cards on education, shall include in
21	such report cards—
22	"(i) the percentage of middle school
23	and other secondary school classes in core
24	academic subjects that are taught by out-
25	of-field teachers;

	110
1	"(ii) the percentage of middle school,
2	other elementary school, and other sec-
3	ondary school classes taught by individuals
4	holding only emergency credentials, or for
5	whom any State certification or licensing
6	standards for teachers have been waived;
7	"(iii) the average statewide class size;
8	OF
9	"(B) in the event the State provides no
10	such report card, shall disseminate to the public
11	the information described in clauses (i) through
12	(iii) of subparagraph (A) through other means.
13	"(2) Public availability.—Such information
14	shall be made widely available to the public, includ-
15	ing parents and students, throughout the State.
16	"(c) GENERAL ACCOUNTING OFFICE.—Not later
17	than September 30, 2004, the Comptroller General of the
18	United States shall—
19	"(1) conduct a study of the progress of the
20	States in increasing the percentage of teachers who
21	are fully qualified teachers for fiscal years 2001
22	through 2003; and
23	"(2) prepare and submit to the Committee on
24	Education and Workforce of the House of Rep-
25	resentatives and the Committee on Health, Edu-

 containing the results of the study. "SEC. 2023. LOCAL APPLICATION ACCOUNTABILITY PROVI- SIONS. "Each local application submitted under section 2016 shall contain assurances that— "(1) the agency will not hire a teacher with funds made available to the agency under this sub- part, unless the teacher is a fully qualified teacher; "(2) the local educational agency and schools served by the agency will work to ensure, through voluntary agreements and incentive programs, that elementary school and secondary school teachers in high-poverty schools served by the local educational agency will be at least as well qualified, in terms of experience and credentials, as the instructional staff in schools served by the same local educational agen- ey that are not high-poverty schools; "(3) any teacher who receives certification from the National Board for Professional Teaching Standards will be considered fully qualified to teach, in the academic subjects in which the teacher is cer- tified, in high-poverty schools in any school district or community served by the local educational agen- ey; and 	1	cation, Labor, and Pensions of the Senate a report
 4 sions. 5 "Each local application submitted under section 2016 6 shall contain assurances that— 7 "(1) the agency will not hire a teacher with funds made available to the agency under this sub- part, unless the teacher is a fully qualified teacher; 10 "(2) the local educational agency and schools served by the agency will work to ensure, through voluntary agreements and incentive programs, that elementary school and secondary school teachers in high-poverty schools served by the local educational agency in schools served by the same local educational agen- ey that are not high-poverty schools; 19 "(3) any teacher who receives certification from the National Board for Professional Teaching Standards will be considered fully qualified to teach, in the academic subjects in which the teacher is certified, in high-poverty schools in any school district or community served by the local educational agen- 	2	containing the results of the study.
 5 "Each local application submitted under section 2016 6 shall contain assurances that— 7 "(1) the agency will not hire a teacher with funds made available to the agency under this sub- part, unless the teacher is a fully qualified teacher; 10 "(2) the local educational agency and schools served by the agency will work to ensure, through voluntary agreements and incentive programs, that elementary school and secondary school teachers in high-poverty schools served by the local educational agency will be at least as well qualified, in terms of experience and credentials, as the instructional staff in schools served by the same local educational agen- ey that are not high-poverty schools; "(3) any teacher who receives certification from the National Board for Professional Teaching Standards will be considered fully qualified to teach, in the academic subjects in which the teacher is certified, in high-poverty schools in any school district or community served by the local educational agen- 	3	"SEC. 2023. LOCAL APPLICATION ACCOUNTABILITY PROVI-
 6 shall contain assurances that— 7 "(1) the agency will not hire a teacher with funds made available to the agency under this sub- part, unless the teacher is a fully qualified teacher; 10 "(2) the local educational agency and schools served by the agency will work to ensure, through voluntary agreements and incentive programs, that elementary school and secondary school teachers in high-poverty schools served by the local educational agency will be at least as well qualified, in terms of experience and credentials, as the instructional staff in schools served by the same local educational agen- cy that are not high-poverty schools; "(3) any teacher who receives certification from the National Board for Professional Teaching Standards will be considered fully qualified to teach, in the academic subjects in which the teacher is cer- tified, in high-poverty schools in any school district or community served by the local educational agen- 	4	SIONS.
 "(1) the agency will not hire a teacher with funds made available to the agency under this sub- part, unless the teacher is a fully qualified teacher; "(2) the local educational agency and schools served by the agency will work to ensure, through voluntary agreements and incentive programs, that elementary school and secondary school teachers in high-poverty schools served by the local educational agency will be at least as well qualified, in terms of experience and credentials, as the instructional staff in schools served by the same local educational agen- cy that are not high-poverty schools; "(3) any teacher who receives certification from the National Board for Professional Teaching Standards will be considered fully qualified to teach, in the academic subjects in which the teacher is cer- tified, in high-poverty schools in any school district or community served by the local educational agen- 	5	"Each local application submitted under section 2016
 funds made available to the agency under this sub- part, unless the teacher is a fully qualified teacher; "(2) the local educational agency and schools served by the agency will work to ensure, through voluntary agreements and incentive programs, that elementary school and secondary school teachers in high-poverty schools served by the local educational agency will be at least as well qualified, in terms of experience and credentials, as the instructional staff in schools served by the same local educational agen- cy that are not high-poverty schools; "(3) any teacher who receives certification from the National Board for Professional Teaching Standards will be considered fully qualified to teach, in the academic subjects in which the teacher is cer- tified, in high-poverty schools in any school district 	6	shall contain assurances that—
 part, unless the teacher is a fully qualified teacher; "(2) the local educational agency and schools served by the agency will work to ensure, through voluntary agreements and incentive programs, that elementary school and secondary school teachers in high-poverty schools served by the local educational agency will be at least as well qualified, in terms of experience and credentials, as the instructional staff in schools served by the same local educational agency that are not high-poverty schools; "(3) any teacher who receives certification from the National Board for Professional Teaching Standards will be considered fully qualified to teach, in the academic subjects in which the teacher is certified, in high-poverty schools in any school district or community served by the local educational agen- 	7	((1) the agency will not hire a teacher with
 "(2) the local educational agency and schools served by the agency will work to ensure, through voluntary agreements and incentive programs, that elementary school and secondary school teachers in high-poverty schools served by the local educational agency will be at least as well qualified, in terms of experience and credentials, as the instructional staff in schools served by the same local educational agency that are not high-poverty schools; "(3) any teacher who receives certification from the National Board for Professional Teaching Standards will be considered fully qualified to teach, in the academic subjects in which the teacher is certified, in high-poverty schools in any school district or community served by the local educational agen- 	8	funds made available to the agency under this sub-
11 served by the agency will work to ensure, through 12 voluntary agreements and incentive programs, that 13 elementary school and secondary school teachers in 14 high-poverty schools served by the local educational 15 agency will be at least as well qualified, in terms of 16 experience and credentials, as the instructional staff 17 in schools served by the same local educational agen- 18 cy that are not high-poverty schools; 19 "(3) any teacher who receives certification from 20 the National Board for Professional Teaching 21 Standards will be considered fully qualified to teach, 22 in the academic subjects in which the teacher is cer- 23 tified, in high-poverty schools in any school district 24 or community served by the local educational agen-	9	part, unless the teacher is a fully qualified teacher;
 voluntary agreements and incentive programs, that elementary school and secondary school teachers in high-poverty schools served by the local educational agency will be at least as well qualified, in terms of experience and credentials, as the instructional staff in schools served by the same local educational agen- cy that are not high-poverty schools; "(3) any teacher who receives certification from the National Board for Professional Teaching Standards will be considered fully qualified to teach, in the academic subjects in which the teacher is cer- tified, in high-poverty schools in any school district or community served by the local educational agen- 	10	((2) the local educational agency and schools
 elementary school and secondary school teachers in high-poverty schools served by the local educational agency will be at least as well qualified, in terms of experience and credentials, as the instructional staff in schools served by the same local educational agen- cy that are not high-poverty schools; "(3) any teacher who receives certification from the National Board for Professional Teaching Standards will be considered fully qualified to teach, in the academic subjects in which the teacher is cer- tified, in high-poverty schools in any school district or community served by the local educational agen- 	11	served by the agency will work to ensure, through
 high-poverty schools served by the local educational agency will be at least as well qualified, in terms of experience and credentials, as the instructional staff in schools served by the same local educational agen- cy that are not high-poverty schools; "(3) any teacher who receives certification from the National Board for Professional Teaching Standards will be considered fully qualified to teach, in the academic subjects in which the teacher is cer- tified, in high-poverty schools in any school district or community served by the local educational agen- 	12	voluntary agreements and incentive programs, that
 agency will be at least as well qualified, in terms of experience and credentials, as the instructional staff in schools served by the same local educational agen- cy that are not high-poverty schools; "(3) any teacher who receives certification from the National Board for Professional Teaching Standards will be considered fully qualified to teach, in the academic subjects in which the teacher is cer- tified, in high-poverty schools in any school district or community served by the local educational agen- 	13	elementary school and secondary school teachers in
 16 experience and credentials, as the instructional staff 17 in schools served by the same local educational agen- 18 cy that are not high-poverty schools; 19 "(3) any teacher who receives certification from 20 the National Board for Professional Teaching 21 Standards will be considered fully qualified to teach, 22 in the academic subjects in which the teacher is cer- 23 tified, in high-poverty schools in any school district 24 or community served by the local educational agen- 	14	high-poverty schools served by the local educational
 in schools served by the same local educational agen- cy that are not high-poverty schools; "(3) any teacher who receives certification from the National Board for Professional Teaching Standards will be considered fully qualified to teach, in the academic subjects in which the teacher is cer- tified, in high-poverty schools in any school district or community served by the local educational agen- 	15	agency will be at least as well qualified, in terms of
 18 cy that are not high-poverty schools; 19 "(3) any teacher who receives certification from 20 the National Board for Professional Teaching 21 Standards will be considered fully qualified to teach, 22 in the academic subjects in which the teacher is cer- 23 tified, in high-poverty schools in any school district 24 or community served by the local educational agen- 	16	experience and credentials, as the instructional staff
19 "(3) any teacher who receives certification from 20 the National Board for Professional Teaching 21 Standards will be considered fully qualified to teach, 22 in the academic subjects in which the teacher is cer- 23 tified, in high-poverty schools in any school district 24 or community served by the local educational agen-	17	in schools served by the same local educational agen-
 the National Board for Professional Teaching Standards will be considered fully qualified to teach, in the academic subjects in which the teacher is cer- tified, in high-poverty schools in any school district or community served by the local educational agen- 	18	cy that are not high-poverty schools;
 Standards will be considered fully qualified to teach, in the academic subjects in which the teacher is cer- tified, in high-poverty schools in any school district or community served by the local educational agen- 	19	"(3) any teacher who receives certification from
 in the academic subjects in which the teacher is cer- tified, in high-poverty schools in any school district or community served by the local educational agen- 	20	the National Board for Professional Teaching
 tified, in high-poverty schools in any school district or community served by the local educational agen- 	21	Standards will be considered fully qualified to teach,
24 or community served by the local educational agen-	22	in the academic subjects in which the teacher is cer-
	23	tified, in high-poverty schools in any school district
25 cy; and	24	or community served by the local educational agen-
	25	cy; and

1	"(4) the agency will—
2	"(A) make available, on request and in an
3	understandable and uniform format, to any par-
4	ent of a student attending any school served by
5	the local educational agency, information re-
6	garding the professional qualifications of the
7	student's classroom teachers with regard to—
8	"(i) whether the teacher has met
9	State certification or licensing criteria for
10	the academic subjects and grade level in
11	which the teacher teaches the student;
12	"(ii) whether the teacher is teaching
13	with emergency or whether any State cer-
14	tification or licensing standard has been
15	waived for the teacher; and
16	"(iii) the academic qualifications of
17	the teacher in the academic subjects and
18	grade levels in which the teacher teaches;
19	and
20	"(B) inform parents that the parents are
21	entitled to receive the information upon request.
22	"SEC. 2024. LOCAL CONTINUATION OF FUNDING.
23	"(a) AGENCIES.—If a local educational agency ap-
24	plies for funds under this subpart for a 4th or subsequent
25	fiscal year (including applying for funds as part of a part-

nership), the agency may receive the funds for that fiscal 1 2 year only if the State determines that the agency has dem-3 onstrated that the agency, in carrying out activities under 4 this subpart during the past fiscal year, has met annual 5 numerical performance objectives for— 6 "(1) improved student performance for all 7 groups described in section 1111(b)(2); 8 "(2) increased participation in sustained profes-9 sional development and mentoring programs; 10 "(3) reduced the beginning teacher attrition 11 rate for the agency; and "(4) reduced the number of teachers who are 12 13 not certified or licensed, and the number who are 14 out-of-field teachers, for the agency. "(b) SCHOOLS.—If a local educational agency applies 15 for funds under this subpart on behalf of a school for a 16 17 4th or subsequent fiscal year (including applying for funds 18 as part of a partnership), the agency may receive the 19 funds for the school for that fiscal year only if the State 20 determines that the school has demonstrated that the 21 school, in carrying out activities under this subpart during 22 the past fiscal year, has met the requirements of para-23 graphs (1) through (4) of subsection (a).

24 "(c) Recruitment Partnerships.—

"(1) IN GENERAL.—If not more than 90 per-1 2 cent of the graduates of a teacher corps program as-3 sisted under this subpart for a fiscal year pass appli-4 cable State or local initial teacher licensing or cer-5 tification examinations, the recruitment partnership 6 providing the teacher corps program shall be ineli-7 gible to receive grant funds for the succeeding fiscal 8 year.

9 "(2) WAIVER.—The State in which the partner-10 ship is located may waive the requirement described 11 in paragraph (1) for a recruitment partnership serv-12 ing a school district that has special circumstances, 13 such as a district with a small number of corps 14 members.

15 "SEC. 2025. LOCAL REPORTS.

16 "(a) IN GENERAL.—Each local educational agency 17 that receives funds under this subpart (including funds re-18 ceived through a partnership) shall prepare, make publicly 19 available, and submit to the State educational agency, 20 every year, beginning in fiscal year 2002, a report on the 21 activities of the agency under this subpart, in such form 22 and containing such information as the State educational 23 agency may reasonably require.

24 "(b) CONTENTS.—The report shall contain, at a 25 minimum—
1	"(1) information on progress throughout the
2	schools served by the local educational agency on the
3	performance measures described in section
4	2014(a)(2) and goals described in paragraphs (3)
5	and (4) of section 2012(b);
6	((2)) information on progress throughout the
7	schools served by the local educational agency to-
8	ward achieving the objectives of, and carrying out
9	the activities described in, this subpart;
10	"(3) data on the progress described in para-
11	graphs (1) and (2), disaggregated by school poverty
12	level, as defined by the State; and
13	"(4) a description of the methodology used to
14	gather the information and data described in para-
15	graphs (1) through (3) .
16	"Subpart 2—National Activities for the Improvement
17	of Teaching and School Leadership
18	"Chapter 1—National Activities and Clearinghouse
19	"SEC. 2031. PROGRAM AUTHORIZED.
20	"(a) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary is authorized to
21	make grants to, and to enter into contracts and coopera-
22	tive agreements with, local educational agencies, edu-
23	cational service agencies, State educational agencies, State
24	agencies for higher education, institutions of higher edu-

1

cation, and other public and private nonprofit agencies,

2 organizations, and institutions to carry out subsection (b). 3 "(b) ACTIVITIES.—In making the grants, and enter-4 ing into the contracts and cooperative agreements, the 5 Secretary-6 "(1) may support activities of national signifi-7 cance that are not supported through other sources 8 and that the Secretary determines will contribute to 9 the improvement of teaching and school leadership 10 in the Nation's schools, such as— "(A) supporting collaborative efforts by 11 States, or consortia of States, to review and 12 13 measure the quality, rigor, and alignment of 14 State standards and assessments: "(B) supporting State and local efforts to 15 16 develop curricula aligned with State standards 17 and assessments; 18 "(C) supporting collaborative efforts by 19 States, or consortia of States, to review and 20 measure the quality and rigor of standards for 21 entry into the field of teaching, including the 22 alignment of such standards with State stand-23 ards for students in elementary school and sec-24 ondary school, and the alignment of initial 25 teacher licensing and certification assessments

1	with State standards for entry into the field of
2	teaching;
3	"(D) supporting the development of mod-
4	els, at the State and local levels, of innovative
5	compensation systems that—
6	"(i) provide incentives for talented in-
7	dividuals who have a strong knowledge of
8	academic content to enter teaching; and
9	"(ii) reward veteran teachers who ac-
10	quire new knowledge and skills that are
11	needed in the schools and districts in
12	which the teachers teach; and
13	"(E) supporting collaborative efforts by
14	States, or consortia of States, to develop per-
15	formance-based systems for assessing content
16	knowledge and teaching skills of teachers prior
17	to initial certification or licensure of the teach-
18	ers;
19	"(2) may support activities of national signifi-
20	cance that the Secretary determines will contribute
21	to the recruitment and retention of highly qualified
22	teachers and principals in schools served by high-
23	poverty local educational agencies, such as—
24	"(A) the development and implementation
25	of a national teacher recruitment clearinghouse

1	and job bank, which shall be coordinated and,
2	to the extent feasible, integrated with the Amer-
3	ica's Job Bank administered by the Secretary
4	of Labor, to—
5	"(i) disseminate information and re-
6	sources nationwide on entering the teach-
7	ing profession, to persons interested in be-
8	coming teachers;
9	"(ii) serve as a national resource cen-
10	ter regarding effective practices for teacher
11	professional development and mentoring,
12	recruitment, and retention;
13	"(iii) link prospective teachers to local
14	educational agencies and training re-
15	sources;
16	"(iv) provide information and tech-
17	nical assistance to prospective teachers
18	about certification and licensing and other
19	State and local requirements related to
20	teaching; and
21	"(v) provide data projections con-
22	cerning teacher and administrator supply
23	and demand and available teaching and
24	administrator opportunities;

1 "(B) the development and implementation, 2 or expansion, of programs that recruit talented individuals to become principals, including such 3 4 programs that employ alternative routes to 5 State certification or licensing that are at least 6 as rigorous as the State's standards for initial 7 certification or licensing of teachers, and that 8 prepare both new and experienced principals to 9 serve as instructional leaders, which may in-10 clude the creation and operation of a national 11 center or regional centers for the preparation 12 and support of principals as leaders of school 13 reform; 14 "(C) efforts to increase the portability of 15 teacher pensions and reciprocity of teaching 16 credentials across State lines; "(D) research, evaluation, and dissemina-17 18 tion activities related to effective strategies for 19 increasing the portability of teachers' credited

years of experience across State and school district lines;

22 "(E) the development and implementation
23 of national or regional programs to—

24 "(i) recruit highly talented individuals25 to become teachers, through alternative

20

21

1	routes to certification or licensing that are
2	at least as rigorous as the State's stand-
3	ards for initial certification or licensing of
4	teachers, in schools served by high-poverty
5	local educational agencies; and
6	"(ii) help retain the individuals for
7	more than 3 years as classroom teachers in
8	schools served by the local educational
9	agencies; and
10	"(F) the establishment of partnerships of
11	high-poverty local educational agencies, teacher
12	organizations, and local businesses, in order to
13	help the agencies attract and retain high-quality
14	teachers and principals through provision of in-
15	creased pay, combined with reforms to raise
16	teacher performance including use of regular,
17	rigorous peer evaluations and (where appro-
18	priate) student evaluations of every teacher;
19	"(3) may support the National Board for Pro-
20	fessional Teaching Standards;
21	"(4)(A) shall carry out a national evaluation,
22	not sooner than 3 years and not later than 4 years
23	after the date of enactment of the Educational Op-
24	portunities Act, of the effect of activities carried out
25	under this title, including an assessment of changes

1	in instructional practice and objective measures of
2	student achievement; and
3	"(B) shall submit a report containing the re-
4	sults of the evaluation to Congress; and
5	"(5) shall annually submit to Congress a report
6	on the information contained in the State reports
7	described in section 2022.
8	"SEC. 2032. EISENHOWER NATIONAL CLEARINGHOUSE FOR
9	MATHEMATICS AND SCIENCE EDUCATION.
10	"(a) Establishment of Clearinghouse.—The
11	Secretary shall award a grant or contract, on a competi-
12	tive basis, to an entity to establish and operate an Eisen-
13	hower National Clearinghouse for Mathematics and
14	Science Education (referred to in this section as 'the
15	Clearinghouse').
16	"(b) Authorized Activities.—
17	"(1) Application and award basis.—
18	"(A) IN GENERAL.—An entity desiring to
19	establish and operate the Clearinghouse shall
20	submit an application to the Secretary at such
21	time, in such manner, and containing such in-
22	formation as the Secretary may reasonably re-
23	quire.
24	"(B) PEER REVIEW.—The Secretary shall
25	establish a peer review panel to make rec-

1	ommendations on the recipient of the award for
2	the Clearinghouse.
3	"(C) BASIS.—The Secretary shall make
4	the award for the Clearinghouse on the basis of
5	merit.
6	"(2) DURATION.—The Secretary shall award
7	the grant or contract for the Clearinghouse for a pe-
8	riod of 5 years.
9	"(3) ACTIVITIES.—The award recipient shall
10	use the award funds to—
11	"(A) maintain a permanent collection of
12	such mathematics and science education in-
13	structional materials and programs for elemen-
14	tary schools and secondary schools as the Sec-
15	retary finds appropriate, and give priority to
16	maintaining such materials and programs that
17	have been identified as promising or exemplary,
18	through a systematic approach such as the use
19	of expert panels required under the Educational
20	Research, Development, Dissemination, and Im-
21	provement Act of 1994;
22	"(B) disseminate the materials and pro-
23	grams described in subparagraph (A) to the
24	public, State educational agencies, local edu-
25	cational agencies, and schools (particularly

1	high-poverty, low-performing schools), including
2	dissemination through the maintenance of an
3	interactive national electronic information man-
4	agement and retrieval system accessible through
5	the World Wide Web and other advanced com-
6	munications technologies;
7	"(C) coordinate activities with entities op-
8	erating other databases containing mathematics
9	and science curriculum and instructional mate-
10	rials, including Federal, non-Federal, and,
11	where feasible, international databases;
12	"(D) using not more than 10 percent of
13	the amount awarded under this section for any
14	fiscal year, participate in collaborative meetings
15	of representatives of the Clearinghouse and re-
16	gional mathematics and science education con-
17	sortia to—
18	"(i) discuss issues of common interest
19	and concern;
20	"(ii) foster effective collaboration and
21	cooperation in acquiring and distributing
22	instructional materials and programs; and
23	"(iii) coordinate and enhance com-
24	puter network access to the Clearinghouse
25	and the resources of the regional consortia;

1	((E) support the development and dissemi-
2	nation of model professional development and
3	mentoring materials for mathematics and
4	science education;
5	"(F) contribute materials or information,
6	as appropriate, to other national repositories or
7	networks; and
8	"(G) gather qualitative and evaluative data
9	on submissions to the Clearinghouse, and dis-
10	seminate that data widely, including through
11	the use of electronic dissemination networks.
12	"(4) SUBMISSION TO CLEARINGHOUSE.—Each
13	Federal agency or department that develops mathe-
14	matics or science education instructional materials
15	or programs, including the National Science Foun-
16	dation and the Department, shall submit copies of
17	that materials or those programs to the Clearing-
18	house.
19	"(5) Steering committee.—The Secretary
20	may appoint a steering committee to recommend
21	policies and activities for the Clearinghouse.
22	"(6) Application of copyright laws.—
23	"(A) CONSTRUCTION.—Nothing in this
24	section shall be construed to allow the use or
25	copying, in any medium, of any material col-

1 lected by the Clearinghouse that is protected 2 under the copyright laws of the United States 3 unless the Clearinghouse obtains the permission 4 of the owner of the copyright. "(B) COMPLIANCE.—In carrying out this 5 6 section, the Clearinghouse shall ensure compli-7 ance with title 17, United States Code. 8 "Chapter 2—Transition to Teaching 9 "SEC. 2041. PURPOSE. "The purpose of this chapter is to address the need 10 11 of high-poverty local educational agencies for highly quali-12 fied teachers in particular academic subjects, such as 13 mathematics, science, foreign languages, bilingual education, and special education needed by the agencies, by-14 "(1) continuing and enhancing the Troops to 15 16 Teachers model for recruiting and supporting the 17 placement of such teachers; and 18 "(2) recruiting, preparing, placing, and supporting career-changing professionals who have 19

knowledge and experience that will help the profes-

21 sionals become such teachers.

22 **"SEC. 2042. DEFINITIONS.**

23 "In this chapter:

20

1	"(1) Program participant.—The term 'pro-
2	gram participant' means a career-changing profes-
3	sional who—
4	"(A) demonstrates interest in, and commit-
5	ment to, becoming a teacher; and
6	"(B) has knowledge and experience that is
7	relevant to teaching a high-need academic sub-
8	ject for a high-poverty local educational agency.
9	"(2) Secretary.—The term 'Secretary' means
10	the Secretary of Education, except as otherwise de-
11	termined in accordance with the agreements de-
12	scribed in section 2043(b).
13	"SEC. 2043. PROGRAM AUTHORIZED.
13 14	"SEC. 2043. PROGRAM AUTHORIZED. "(a) AUTHORITY.—Subject to subsection (b), using
14	"(a) AUTHORITY.—Subject to subsection (b), using
14 15	"(a) AUTHORITY.—Subject to subsection (b), using funds made available to carry out this chapter under sec-
14 15 16	"(a) AUTHORITY.—Subject to subsection (b), using funds made available to carry out this chapter under sec- tion 2003(2)(A) for each fiscal year, the Secretary may
14 15 16 17	"(a) AUTHORITY.—Subject to subsection (b), using funds made available to carry out this chapter under sec- tion 2003(2)(A) for each fiscal year, the Secretary may award grants, contracts, or cooperative agreements to in-
14 15 16 17 18	"(a) AUTHORITY.—Subject to subsection (b), using funds made available to carry out this chapter under sec- tion 2003(2)(A) for each fiscal year, the Secretary may award grants, contracts, or cooperative agreements to in- stitutions of higher education and public and private non-
14 15 16 17 18 19	"(a) AUTHORITY.—Subject to subsection (b), using funds made available to carry out this chapter under sec- tion 2003(2)(A) for each fiscal year, the Secretary may award grants, contracts, or cooperative agreements to in- stitutions of higher education and public and private non- profit agencies or organizations to carry out programs au-
 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 	"(a) AUTHORITY.—Subject to subsection (b), using funds made available to carry out this chapter under sec- tion 2003(2)(A) for each fiscal year, the Secretary may award grants, contracts, or cooperative agreements to in- stitutions of higher education and public and private non- profit agencies or organizations to carry out programs au- thorized under this chapter.
 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 	"(a) AUTHORITY.—Subject to subsection (b), using funds made available to carry out this chapter under sec- tion 2003(2)(A) for each fiscal year, the Secretary may award grants, contracts, or cooperative agreements to in- stitutions of higher education and public and private non- profit agencies or organizations to carry out programs au- thorized under this chapter. "(b) IMPLEMENTATION.—

24 retary of Education shall—

"(A) consult with the Secretary of Defense 1 2 and the Secretary of Transportation regarding 3 the appropriate amount of funding needed to 4 carry out this chapter; and 5 "(B) upon agreement, transfer that 6 amount to the Department of Defense to carry 7 out this chapter. 8 "(2) AGREEMENT.—The Secretary of Edu-9 cation may enter into a written agreement with the 10 Secretary of Defense and the Secretary of Transpor-11 tation, or take such other steps as the Secretary of 12 Education determines are appropriate, to ensure effective implementation of this chapter. 13 14 **"SEC. 2044. APPLICATION.** 15 "Each entity that desires an award under section 2043(a) shall submit an application to the Secretary at 16 17 such time, in such manner, and containing such informa-18 tion as the Secretary may require, including— 19 "(1) a description of the target group of career-20 changing professionals on which the entity will focus 21 in carrying out a program under this chapter, in-22 cluding a description of the characteristics of that 23 target group that shows how the knowledge and ex-24 perience of the members of the group are relevant 25 to meeting the purpose of this chapter;

1	"(2) a description of how the entity will identify
2	and recruit program participants;
3	"(3) a description of the training that program
4	participants will receive and how that training will
5	relate to their certification or licensing as teachers;
6	"(4) a description of how the entity will ensure
7	that program participants are placed with, and teach
8	for, high-poverty local educational agencies;
9	((5) a description of the teacher induction serv-
10	ices (which may be provided through induction pro-
11	grams in existence on the date of submission of the
12	application) the program participants will receive
13	throughout at least their first year of teaching;
14	"(6) a description of how the entity will collabo-
15	rate, as needed, with other institutions, agencies, or
16	organizations to recruit, train, place, and support
17	program participants under this chapter, including
18	evidence of the commitment of the institutions,
19	agencies, or organizations to the entity's program;
20	"(7) a description of how the entity will evalu-
21	ate the progress and effectiveness of the entity's pro-
22	gram, including a description of—
23	"(A) the program's goals and objectives;
24	"(B) the performance indicators the entity
25	will use to measure the program's progress; and

	200
1	"(C) the outcome measures that the entity
2	will use to determine the program's effective-
3	ness; and
4	"(8) an assurance that the entity will provide to
5	the Secretary such information as the Secretary de-
6	termines to be necessary to determine the overall ef-
7	fectiveness of programs carried out under this chap-
8	ter.
9	"SEC. 2045. USES OF FUNDS AND PERIOD OF SERVICE.
10	"(a) AUTHORIZED ACTIVITIES.—Funds made avail-
11	able under this chapter may be used for—
12	"(1) recruiting program participants, including
13	informing individuals who are potential participants
14	of opportunities available under the program and
15	putting the individuals in contact with other institu-
16	tions, agencies, or organizations that would train,
17	place, and support the individuals;
18	"(2) providing training stipends and other fi-
19	nancial incentives for program participants, such as
20	paying for moving expenses, not to exceed \$5,000, in
21	the aggregate, per participant;
22	"(3) assisting institutions of higher education
23	or other providers of teacher training to tailor their
24	training to meet the particular needs of professionals
25	who are changing their careers to teaching;

1	"(4) providing placement activities, including
2	identifying high-poverty local educational agencies
3	with needs for the particular skills and characteris-
4	tics of the newly trained program participants and
5	assisting the participants to obtain employment with
6	the local educational agencies; and
7	"(5) providing post-placement induction or sup-
8	port activities for program participants.
9	"(b) PERIOD OF SERVICE.—A program participant in
10	a program under carried out under this chapter who com-
11	pletes the participant's training shall serve in a high-pov-
12	erty local educational agency for at least 3 years.
13	"(c) Repayment.—The Secretary shall establish
14	such requirements as the Secretary determines to be ap-
15	propriate to ensure that program participants who receive
16	a training stipend or other financial incentive under sub-
17	section $(a)(2)$, but fail to complete their service obligation
18	under subsection (b), repay all or a portion of such stipend
19	or other incentive.
20	"SEC. 2046. EQUITABLE DISTRIBUTION.
21	"To the extent practicable, the Secretary shall make

21 "To the extent practicable, the Secretary shall make22 awards under this chapter that support programs in dif-23 ferent geographic regions of the Nation.

"Chapter 3—Hometown Teachers

197

2 "SEC. 2051. PURPOSE.

1

3 "The purpose of this chapter is to support the efforts of high-need local educational agencies to develop and im-4 5 plement comprehensive approaches to recruiting and retaining highly qualified teachers, including recruiting such 6 7 teachers through Hometown Teacher programs that carry out long-term strategies to expand the capacity of the 8 communities served by the agencies to produce local teach-9 10 ers.

11 "SEC. 2052. DEFINITION.

12 "The term 'high-need local educational agency' 13 means a local educational agency that serves an elemen-14 tary school or secondary school located in an area in which 15 there is—

16 "(1) a high percentage (as determined by the
17 State in which the agency is located) of individuals
18 from families with incomes below the poverty line;

"(2) a high percentage (as determined by the
State in which the agency is located) of secondary
school teachers not teaching in the core academic
subjects in which the teachers were trained to teach;
or

24 "(3) a high percentage (as determined by the25 State in which the agency is located) of elementary

1 school and secondary school teachers who are not 2 fully qualified teachers.

3 "SEC. 2053. PROGRAM AUTHORIZED.

"From funds made available to carry out this chapter 4 under section 2003(2)(B) for each fiscal year, the Sec-5 retary may award grants to high-need local educational 6 7 agencies to carry out Hometown Teacher programs and 8 other activities described in this chapter.

9 "SEC. 2054. APPLICATIONS.

10 "Each high-need local educational agency that desires to receive a grant under section 2053 shall submit an ap-11 12 plication to the Secretary at such time, in such manner, 13 and containing such information as the Secretary may re-14 quire, including—

15 "(1) a description of the local educational agen-16 cy's assessment of the agency's needs for teachers, 17 such as the agency's projected shortage of qualified 18 teachers and the percentage of teachers serving the 19 agency who lack certification or licensure or who are 20 teaching out of field;

"(2) a description of a Hometown Teacher pro-21 22 gram that the local educational agency plans to de-23 velop and implement with the funds made available 24 through the grant, including a description of— 25

"(A) strategies the agency will use to—

"(i) encourage secondary school and
middle school students in schools served by
the local educational agency to consider
pursuing careers in the teaching profes-
sion; and
"(ii) provide support at the under-
graduate level to those students who intend
to become teachers; and
"(B) the agency's plans to streamline the
hiring timelines in the hiring policies and prac-
tices of the agency for participants in the
Hometown Teacher program;
"(3) a description of the long-term strategies
that the agency will use, if any, to reduce the agen-
cy's teacher attrition rate, including providing men-
toring programs and making efforts to raise teacher
salaries and create more desirable working condi-
tions for teachers;
"(4) a description of the agency's strategy for
ensuring that all secondary school teachers and mid-
dle school teachers in the school district are fully
certified or licensed in an academic subject and are
certified or licensed in an academic subject and are teaching the majority of their classes in the subject

1	"(5) a description of the short-term strategies
2	the agency will use, if any, to address the agency's
3	teacher shortage problem, including the strategies
4	the agency will use to ensure that the teachers that
5	the local educational agency is targeting for employ-
6	ment are fully certified or licensed;
7	"(6) a description of the agency's long-term
8	plan for ensuring that the agency's teachers have
9	opportunities for sustained, high-quality professional
10	development;
11	"(7) a description of the ways in which the ac-
12	tivities proposed to be carried out through the grant
13	are part of the agency's overall plan for improving
14	the quality of teaching and student achievement;
15	"(8) a description of how the agency will col-
16	laborate, as needed, with other institutions, agencies,
17	or organizations to develop and implement the strat-
18	egies the agency proposes in the application, includ-
19	ing evidence of the commitment of the institutions,
20	agencies, or organizations to the agency's activities;
21	((9) a description of the strategies the agency
22	will use to coordinate activities funded under the
23	program carried out under this chapter with activi-
24	ties funded through other Federal programs that ad-
25	dress teacher shortages, including programs carried

-
out through grants to local educational agencies
under title I or this title, including chapter 2, if the
applicant receives funds from the programs;
"(10) a description of how the agency will
evaluate the progress and effectiveness of the Home-
town Teacher program, including a description of—
"(A) the agency's goals and objectives for
the program;
"(B) the performance indicators that the
agency will use to measure the program's effec-
tiveness; and
"(C) the measurable outcome measures,
such as increased percentages of fully certified
or licensed teachers, that the agency will use to
determine the program's effectiveness; and
((11) an assurance that the agency will provide
to the Secretary such information as the Secretary
determines to be necessary to determine the overall
effectiveness of programs carried out under this

20 chapter.

21 "SEC. 2055. PRIORITY.

22 "In awarding grants under this chapter, the Sec23 retary may give priority to agencies submitting applica24 tions that—

"(1) focus on increasing the percentage of
 qualified teachers in particular teaching fields, such
 as mathematics, science, and bilingual education;
 and

5 "(2) focus on recruiting qualified teachers for
6 certain types of communities, such as urban and
7 rural communities.

8 "SEC. 2056. USE OF FUNDS.

9 "(a) MANDATORY USE OF FUNDS.—A local edu-10 cational agency that receives a grant under this chapter 11 shall use the funds made available through the grant to 12 develop and implement long-term strategies to address the 13 agency's teacher shortage, including carrying out Home-14 town Teacher programs such as the programs described 15 in section 2051.

16 "(b) PERMISSIBLE USE OF FUNDS.—A local edu17 cational agency that receives a grant under this chapter
18 may use the funds made available through the grant to—

"(1) develop and implement strategies to reduce
the local educational agency's teacher attrition rate,
including providing mentoring programs, increasing
teacher salaries, and creating more desirable working conditions for teachers; and

24 "(2) develop and implement short-term strate-25 gies to address the agency's teacher shortage, in-

cluding providing scholarships to undergraduates
 who agree to teach in the school district served by
 the agency for a certain number of years, providing
 signing bonuses for teachers, and implementing
 streamlined hiring practices.

6 "(c) SUPPLEMENT, NOT SUPPLANT.—Funds made
7 available under this chapter shall be used to supplement,
8 and shall not supplant, State and local funds expended
9 to carry out programs and activities authorized under this
10 chapter.

11 "SEC. 2057. SERVICE REQUIREMENTS.

"(a) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary shall establish 12 13 such requirements as the Secretary finds to be necessary to ensure that a recipient of a scholarship under this chap-14 15 ter who completes a teacher education program subsequently-16

17 "(1) teaches in a school district served by a
18 high-need local educational agency, for a period of
19 time equivalent to the period for which the recipient
20 received the scholarship; or

21 "(2) repays the amount of the funds provided22 through the scholarship.

23 "(b) USE OF REPAID FUNDS.—The Secretary shall
24 deposit any such repaid funds in an account, and use the
25 funds to carry out additional activities under this chapter.

Chapter 4—Early Childhood Educator Professional Development

3 "SEC. 2061. PURPOSE.

"In support of the national effort to attain the first 4 5 of America's Education Goals, the purpose of this chapter is to enhance the school readiness of young children, par-6 7 ticularly disadvantaged young children, and to prevent 8 them from encountering reading difficulties once they 9 enter school, by improving the knowledge and skills of 10 early childhood educators who work in communities that 11 have high concentrations of children living in poverty.

12 "SEC. 2062. PROGRAM AUTHORIZED.

13 "(a) GRANTS TO PARTNERSHIPS.—The Secretary
14 shall carry out the purpose of this chapter by awarding
15 grants, on a competitive basis, to partnerships consisting
16 of—

17 "(1)(A) one or more institutions of higher edu18 cation that provide professional development for
19 early childhood educators who work with children
20 from low-income families in high-need communities;
21 or

22 "(B) another public or private, nonprofit entity23 that provides such professional development;

24 "(2) one or more public agencies (including
25 local educational agencies, State educational agen26 cies, State human services agencies, and State and
•\$ 7 IS

local agencies administering programs under the
 Child Care and Development Block Grant Act of
 1990), Head Start agencies, or private, nonprofit or ganizations; and
 "(3) to the extent feasible, an entity with dem-

onstrated experience in providing violence prevention
education training to educators in early childhood
education programs.

9 "(b) PRIORITY.—In awarding grants under this 10 chapter, the Secretary shall give priority to partnerships 11 that include 1 or more local educational agencies which 12 operate early childhood education programs for children 13 from low-income families in high-need communities.

14 "(c) DURATION AND NUMBER OF GRANTS.—

15 "(1) DURATION.—Each grant under this chap-16 ter shall be awarded for not more than 4 years.

17 "(2) NUMBER.—No partnership may receive
18 more than 1 grant under this chapter.

19 "SEC. 2063. APPLICATIONS.

"(a) APPLICATIONS REQUIRED.—Any partnership
that desires to receive a grant under this chapter shall
submit an application to the Secretary at such time, in
such manner, and containing such information as the Secretary may require.

1 "(b) CONTENTS.—Each such application shall 2 include—

3 "(1) a description of the high-need community
4 to be served by the project, including such demo5 graphic and socioeconomic information as the Sec6 retary may request;

7 "(2) information on the quality of the early
8 childhood educator professional development pro9 gram currently conducted by the institution of high10 er education or other provider in the partnership;

11 "(3) the results of the assessment that the enti-12 ties in the partnership have undertaken to determine 13 the most critical professional development needs of 14 the early childhood educators to be served by the 15 partnership and in the broader community, and a 16 description of how the proposed project will address 17 those needs;

18 "(4) a description of how the proposed project
19 will be carried out, including—

20 "(A) how individuals will be selected to
21 participate;

22 "(B) the types of research-based profes23 sional development activities that will be carried
24 out;

1	"(C) how research on effective professional
2	development and on adult learning will be used
3	to design and deliver project activities;
4	"(D) how the project will coordinate with
5	and build on, and will not supplant or dupli-
6	cate, early childhood education professional de-
7	velopment activities that exist in the commu-
8	nity;
9	"(E) how the project will train early child-
10	hood educators to provide services that are
11	based on developmentally appropriate practices
12	and the best available research on child, lan-
13	guage, and literacy development and on early
14	childhood pedagogy;
15	"(F) how the program will train early
16	childhood educators to meet the diverse edu-
17	cational needs of children in the community, in-
18	cluding children who have limited English pro-
19	ficiency, disabilities, or other special needs; and
20	"(G) how the project will train early child-
21	hood educators in identifying and preventing
22	behavioral problems or violent behavior in chil-
23	dren;
24	"(5) a description of—

207

1	"(A) the specific objectives that the part-
2	nership will seek to attain through the project,
3	and how the partnership will measure progress
4	toward attainment of those objectives; and
5	"(B) how the objectives and the measure-
6	ment activities align with the performance indi-
7	cators established by the Secretary under sec-
8	tion 2066(a);
9	"(6) a description of the partnership's plan for
10	institutionalizing the activities carried out under the
11	project, so that the activities continue once Federal
12	funding ceases;
13	((7) an assurance that, where applicable, the
14	project will provide appropriate professional develop-
15	ment to volunteer staff, as well as to paid staff; and
16	"(8) an assurance that, in developing its appli-
17	cation and in carrying out its project, the partner-
18	ship has consulted with, and will consult with, rel-
19	evant agencies and early childhood educator organi-
20	zations described in section $2062(a)(2)$ that are not
21	members of the partnership.
22	"SEC. 2064. SELECTION OF GRANTEES.
23	"(a) CRITERIA.—The Secretary shall select partner-

23 "(a) CRITERIA.—The Secretary shall select partner24 ships to receive funding on the basis of the community's
25 need for assistance and the quality of the applications.

"(b) GEOGRAPHIC DISTRIBUTION.—In selecting
 partnerships, the Secretary shall seek to ensure that com munities in different regions of the Nation, as well as both
 urban and rural communities, are served.

5 "SEC. 2065. USES OF FUNDS.

6 "(a) IN GENERAL.—Each partnership receiving a 7 grant under this chapter shall use the grant funds to carry 8 out activities that will improve the knowledge and skills 9 of early childhood educators who are working in early 10 childhood programs that are located in high-need commu-11 nities and serve concentrations of children from low-in-12 come families.

13 "(b) ALLOWABLE ACTIVITIES.—Such activities may14 include—

"(1) professional development for individuals
working as early childhood educators, particularly to
familiarize those individuals with the application of
recent research on child, language, and literacy development and on early childhood pedagogy;

"(2) professional development for early childhood educators in working with parents, based on
the best current research on child, language, and literacy development and parent involvement, so that
the educators can prepare their children to succeed
in school;

1	"(3) professional development for early child-
2	hood educators to work with children who have lim-
3	ited English proficiency, disabilities, and other spe-
4	cial needs;
5	"(4) professional development to train early
6	childhood educators in identifying and preventing
7	behavioral problems or violent behavior in children;
8	"(5) activities that assist and support early
9	childhood educators during their first three years in
10	the field;
11	"(6) development and implementation of early
12	childhood educator professional development pro-
13	grams that make use of distance learning and other
14	technologies;
15	((7) professional development activities related
16	to the selection and use of research-based diagnostic
17	assessments to improve teaching and learning; and
18	"(8) data collection, evaluation, and reporting
19	needed to meet the requirements of this chapter re-
20	lating to accountability.
21	"SEC. 2066. ACCOUNTABILITY.
22	"(a) Performance Indicators.—Simultaneously
23	with the publication of any application notice for grants

24 under this chapter, the Secretary shall announce perform-

ance indicators for this chapter, which shall be designed 1 2 to measure— 3 "(1) the quality and assessability of the profes-4 sional development provided; ((2)) the impact of that professional develop-5 6 ment on the early childhood education provided by 7 the individuals who are trained; and "(3) such other measures of program impact as 8 9 the Secretary determines appropriate. 10 "(b) ANNUAL REPORTS; TERMINATION.— "(1) ANNUAL REPORTS.—Each partnership re-11 12 ceiving a grant under this chapter shall report annu-13 ally to the Secretary on the partnership's progress 14 against the performance indicators. 15 "(2) TERMINATION.—The Secretary may termi-16 nate a grant under this chapter at any time if the 17 Secretary determines that the partnership is not 18 making satisfactory progress against the indicators. 19 "SEC. 2067. COST-SHARING. 20 "(a) IN GENERAL.—Each partnership shall provide, 21 from other sources, which may include other Federal 22 sources-"(1) at least 50 percent of the total cost of its 23

23 "(1) at least 50 percent of the total cost of its
24 project for the grant period; and

"(2) at least 20 percent of the project cost in
 each year.

- 3 "(b) ACCEPTABLE CONTRIBUTIONS.—A partnership
 4 may meet the requirement of subsection (a) through cash
 5 or in-kind contributions, fairly valued.
- 6 "(c) WAIVERS.—The Secretary may waive or modify
 7 the requirements of subsection (a) in cases of dem8 onstrated financial hardship.

9 "SEC. 2068. FEDERAL COORDINATION.

10 "The Secretary and the Secretary of Health and
11 Human Services shall coordinate activities under this
12 chapter and other early childhood programs administered
13 by the two Secretaries.

14 **"SEC. 2069. DEFINITIONS.**

15 "In this chapter:

- 16 "(1) High-need community.—
- 17 "(A) IN GENERAL.—The term 'high-need18 community' means—

"(i) a municipality, or a portion of a
municipality, in which at least 50 percent
of the children are from low-income families; or

23 "(ii) a municipality that is one of the24 10 percent of municipalities within the

1	State having the greatest numbers of such
2	children.
3	"(B) DETERMINATION.—In determining
4	which communities are described in subpara-
5	graph (A), the Secretary shall use such data as
6	the Secretary determines are most accurate and
7	appropriate.
8	"(2) Low-income family.—The term 'low-in-
9	come family' means a family with an income below
10	the poverty line (as defined by the Office of Manage-
11	ment and Budget and revised annually in accordance
12	with section $673(2)$ of the Community Services
13	Block Grant Act) applicable to a family of the size
14	involved for the most recent fiscal year for which
15	satisfactory data are available.
16	"(3) EARLY CHILDHOOD EDUCATOR.—The
17	term 'early childhood educator' means a person who
18	provides care and education to children at any age
19	from birth through kindergarten.".
20	(b) Conforming Amendment.—The Troops-to-
21	Teachers Program Act of 1999 (20 U.S.C. 9301 et seq.)
22	is repealed.

213

Subtitle B—Safe, Healthy Schools 1 and Communities 2 3 **CHAPTER 1—GRANTS FOR SCHOOL RENOVATION** 4 SEC. 311. GRANTS FOR SCHOOL RENOVATION. 5 Title X (20 U.S.C. 8001 et seq.) is amended by adding at the end the following: 6 7 **"PART L—SCHOOL RENOVATION** 8 "SEC. 10995. GRANTS FOR SCHOOL RENOVATION. 9 "(a) IN GENERAL.— 10 "(1) Allocation of funds.—Of the amount 11 appropriated for each fiscal year under subsection 12 (k), the Secretary of Education shall allocate— 13 "(A) 6.0 percent of such amount for 14 grants to impacted local educational agencies 15 (as defined in paragraph (3)) for school repair, 16 renovation, and construction; "(B) 0.25 percent of such amount for 17 18 grants to outlying areas for school repair and 19 renovation in high-need schools and commu-20 nities, allocated on such basis, and subject to 21 such terms and conditions, as the Secretary de-22 termines appropriate; "(C) 2 percent of such amount for grants 23 24 to public entities, private nonprofit entities, and

1	consortia of such entities, for use in accordance
2	with subpart 2 of part C of this title X; and
3	"(D) the remainder to State educational
4	agencies in proportion to the amount each State
5	received under part A of title I for fiscal year
6	2001, except that no State shall receive less
7	than 0.5 percent of the amount allocated under
8	this subparagraph.
9	"(2) Determination of grant amount.—
10	"(A) Determination of weighted stu-
11	DENT UNITS.—For purposes of computing the
12	grant amounts under paragraph (1)(A) for fis-
13	cal year 2001, the Secretary shall determine the
14	results obtained by the computation made
15	under section 8003 with respect to children de-
16	scribed in subsection $(a)(1)(C)$ of such section
17	and computed under subsection $(a)(2)(B)$ of
18	such section for such year—
19	"(i) for each impacted local edu-
20	cational agency that receives funds under
21	this section; and
22	"(ii) for all such agencies together.
23	"(B) Computation of payment.—For
24	fiscal year 2002, the Secretary shall calculate

1	the amount of a grant to an impacted local edu-
2	cational agency by—
3	"(i) dividing the amount described in
4	paragraph (1)(A) by the results of the
5	computation described in subparagraph
6	(A)(ii); and
7	"(ii) multiplying the number derived
8	under clause (i) by the results of the com-
9	putation described in subparagraph (A)(i)
10	for such agency.
11	"(3) DEFINITION.—For purposes of this sec-
12	tion, the term 'impacted local educational agency'
13	means, for fiscal year 2001—
14	"(A) a local educational agency that re-
15	ceives a basic support payment under section
16	8003(b) for such fiscal year; and
17	"(B) with respect to which the number of
18	children determined under section
19	8003(a)(1)(C) for the preceding school year
20	constitutes at least 50 percent of the total stu-
21	dent enrollment in the schools of the agency
22	during such school year.
23	"(b) WITHIN-STATE ALLOCATIONS.—
24	"(1) Administrative costs.—
1	"(A) STATE EDUCATIONAL AGENCY AD-
----	--
2	MINISTRATION.—Except as provided in sub-
3	paragraph (B), each State educational agency
4	may reserve not more than 1 percent of its allo-
5	cation under subsection $(a)(1)(D)$ for the pur-
6	pose of administering the distribution of grants
7	under this subsection.
8	"(B) STATE ENTITY ADMINISTRATION.—If
9	the State educational agency transfers funds to
10	a State entity described in paragraph (2)(A),
11	the agency shall transfer to such entity 0.75 of
12	the amount reserved under this paragraph for
13	the purpose of administering the distribution of
14	grants under this subsection.
15	"(2) Reservation for competitive school
16	REPAIR AND RENOVATION GRANTS TO LOCAL EDU-
17	CATIONAL AGENCIES.—
18	"(A) IN GENERAL.—Subject to the res-
19	ervation under paragraph (1), of the funds allo-
20	cated to a State educational agency under sub-
21	section $(a)(1)(D)$, the State educational agency
22	shall distribute 75 percent of such funds to
23	local educational agencies or, if such State edu-
24	cational agency is not responsible for the fi-
25	nancing of education facilities, the agency shall

1	transfer such funds to the State entity respon-
2	sible for the financing of education facilities (re-
3	ferred to in this section as the 'State entity')
4	for distribution by such entity to local edu-
5	cational agencies in accordance with this para-
6	graph, to be used, consistent with subsection
7	(c), for school repair and renovation.
8	"(B) Competitive grants to local
9	EDUCATIONAL AGENCIES.—
10	"(i) IN GENERAL.—The State edu-
11	cational agency or State entity shall carry
12	out a program of competitive grants to
13	local educational agencies for the purpose
14	described in subparagraph (A). Of the
15	total amount available for distribution to
16	such agencies under this paragraph, the
17	State educational agency or State entity,
18	shall, in carrying out the competition—
19	"(I) award to high poverty local
20	educational agencies described in
21	clause (ii), in the aggregate, at least
22	an amount which bears the same rela-
23	tionship to such total amount as the
24	aggregate amount such local edu-
25	cational agencies received under part

1	A of title I for fiscal year 2002 bears
2	to the aggregate amount received for
3	such fiscal year under such part by all
4	local educational agencies in the
5	State;
6	"(II) award to rural local edu-
7	cational agencies in the State, in the
8	aggregate, at least an amount which
9	bears the same relationship to such
10	total amount as the aggregate amount
11	such rural local educational agencies
12	received under part A of title I for fis-
13	cal year 2001 bears to the aggregate
14	amount received for such fiscal year
15	under such part by all local edu-
16	cational agencies in the State; and
17	"(III) award the remaining funds
18	to local educational agencies not re-
19	ceiving an award under subclause (I)
20	or (II), including high poverty and
21	rural local educational agencies that
22	did not receive such an award.
23	"(ii) High poverty local edu-
24	CATIONAL AGENCIES.—A local educational
25	agency is described in this clause if—

	 0
1	"(I) the percentage described in
2	subparagraph (C)(i) with respect to
3	the agency is 30 percent or greater; or
4	"(II) the number of children de-
5	scribed in such subparagraph with re-
6	spect to the agency is at least 10,000.
7	"(C) CRITERIA FOR AWARDING GRANTS.—
8	In awarding competitive grants under this para-
9	graph, a State educational agency or State enti-
10	ty shall take into account the following criteria:
11	"(i) The percentage of poor children 5
12	to 17 years of age, inclusive, in a local
13	educational agency.
14	"(ii) The need of a local educational
15	agency for school repair and renovation, as
16	demonstrated by the condition of its public
17	school facilities.
18	"(iii) The fiscal capacity of a local
19	educational agency to meet its needs for
20	repair and renovation of public school fa-
21	cilities without assistance under this sec-
22	tion, including its ability to raise funds
23	through the use of local bonding capacity
24	and otherwise.

221

1	"(iv) In the case of a local educational
2	agency that proposes to fund a repair or
3	renovation project for a charter school or
4	schools, the extent to which the school or
5	schools have access to funding for the
6	project through the financing methods
7	available to other public schools or local
8	educational agencies in the State.
9	"(v) The likelihood that the local edu-
10	cational agency will maintain, in good con-
11	dition, any facility whose repair or renova-
12	tion is assisted under this section.
13	"(D) Possible matching require-
14	MENT.—
15	"(i) IN GENERAL.—A State edu-
16	cational agency or State entity may require
17	local educational agencies to match funds
18	awarded under this subsection.
19	"(ii) MATCH AMOUNT.—The amount
20	of a match described in clause (i) may be
21	established by using a sliding scale that
22	takes into account the relative poverty of
23	the population served by the local edu-
24	cational agency.

1	"(3) Reservation for competitive idea or
2	TECHNOLOGY GRANTS TO LOCAL EDUCATIONAL
3	AGENCIES.—
4	"(A) IN GENERAL.—Subject to the res-
5	ervation under paragraph (1), of the funds allo-
6	cated to a State educational agency under sub-
7	section $(a)(1)(D)$, the State educational agency
8	shall distribute 25 percent of such funds to
9	local educational agencies through competitive
10	grant processes, to be used for the following:
11	"(i) To carry out activities under part
12	B of the Individuals with Disabilities Edu-
13	cation Act (20 U.S.C. 1411 et seq.).
14	"(ii) For technology activities that are
15	carried out in connection with school repair
16	and renovation, including—
17	"(I) wiring;
18	"(II) acquiring hardware and
19	software;
20	"(III) acquiring connectivity link-
21	ages and resources; and
22	"(IV) acquiring microwave, fiber
23	optics, cable, and satellite trans-
24	mission equipment.

1	"(B) CRITERIA FOR AWARDING IDEA
2	GRANTS.—In awarding competitive grants
3	under subparagraph (A) to be used to carry out
4	activities under part B of the Individuals with
5	Disabilities Education Act (20 U.S.C. 1411 et
6	seq.), a State educational agency shall take into
7	account the following criteria:
8	"(i) The need of a local educational
9	agency for additional funds for a student
10	whose individually allocable cost for ex-
11	penses related to the Individuals with Dis-
12	abilities Education Act substantially ex-
13	ceeds the State's average per-pupil expend-
14	iture (as defined in section $14101(2)$).
15	"(ii) The need of a local educational
16	agency for additional funds for special edu-
17	cation and related services under part B of
18	the Individuals with Disabilities Education
19	Act (20 U.S.C. 1411 et seq.).
20	"(iii) The need of a local educational
21	agency for additional funds for assistive
22	technology devices (as defined in section
23	602 of the Individuals with Disabilities
24	Education Act (20 U.S.C. 1401)) or assist-

children being served under part B of the
Individuals with Disabilities Education Act
(20 U.S.C. 1411 et seq.).
"(iv) The need of a local educational
agency for additional funds for activities
under part B of the Individuals with Dis-
abilities Education Act (20 U.S.C. 1411 et
seq.) in order for children with disabilities
to make progress toward meeting the per-
formance goals and indicators established
by the State under section $612(a)(16)$ of
such Act (20 U.S.C. 1412).
"(C) CRITERIA FOR AWARDING TECH-
NOLOGY GRANTS.—In awarding competitive
grants under subparagraph (A) to be used for
technology activities that are carried out in con-
nection with school repair and renovation, a
State educational agency shall take into account
the need of a local educational agency for addi-
tional funds for such activities, including the
need for the activities described in subclauses
(I) through (IV) of subparagraph (A)(ii).
"(c) Rules Applicable to School Repair and

24 RENOVATION.—With respect to funds made available

1	under this section that are used for school repair and ren-
2	ovation, the following rules shall apply:
3	"(1) PERMISSIBLE USES OF FUNDS.—School
4	repair and renovation shall be limited to one or more
5	of the following:
6	"(A) Emergency repairs or renovations to
7	public school facilities only to ensure the health
8	and safety of students and staff, including—
9	"(i) repairing, replacing, or installing
10	roofs, electrical wiring, plumbing systems,
11	or sewage systems;
12	"(ii) repairing, replacing, or installing
13	heating, ventilation, or air conditioning
14	systems (including insulation); and
15	"(iii) bringing public schools into com-
16	pliance with fire and safety codes.
17	"(B) School facilities modifications nec-
18	essary to render public school facilities acces-
19	sible in order to comply with the Americans
20	with Disabilities Act of 1990 (42 U.S.C. 12101
21	et seq.).
22	"(C) School facilities modifications nec-
23	essary to render public school facilities acces-
24	sible in order to comply with section 504 of the
25	Rehabilitation Act of 1973 (29 U.S.C. 794).

1	"(D) Asbestos abatement or removal from
2	public school facilities.
3	"(E) Renovation, repair, and acquisition
4	needs related to the building infrastructure of a
5	charter school.
6	"(2) Impermissible uses of funds.—No
7	funds received under this section may be used for—
8	"(A) payment of maintenance costs in con-
9	nection with any projects constructed in whole
10	or part with Federal funds provided under this
11	section;
12	"(B) the construction of new facilities, ex-
13	cept for facilities for an impacted local edu-
14	cational agency (as defined in subsection
15	(a)(3)); or
16	"(C) stadiums or other facilities primarily
17	used for athletic contests or exhibitions or other
18	events for which admission is charged to the
19	general public.
20	"(3) CHARTER SCHOOLS.—A public charter
21	school that constitutes a local educational agency
22	under State law shall be eligible for assistance under
23	the same terms and conditions as any other local
24	educational agency (as defined in section
25	14101(18)).

"(4) SUPPLEMENT, NOT SUPPLANT.—Excluding 1 2 the uses described in subparagraphs (B) and (C) of 3 paragraph (1), a local educational agency shall use 4 Federal funds subject to this subsection only to sup-5 plement the amount of funds that would, in the ab-6 sence of such Federal funds, be made available from 7 non-Federal sources for school repair and renova-8 tion.

9 "(d) SPECIAL RULE.—Each local educational agency 10 that receives funds under this section shall ensure that, 11 if it carries out repair or renovation through a contract, 12 any such contract process ensures the maximum number 13 of qualified bidders, including small, minority, and women-14 owned businesses, through full and open competition.

15 "(e) PUBLIC COMMENT.—Each local educational
16 agency receiving funds under paragraph (2) or (3) of sub17 section (b)—

"(1) shall provide parents, educators, and all
other interested members of the community the opportunity to consult on the use of funds received
under such paragraph;

"(2) shall provide the public with adequate and
efficient notice of the opportunity described in paragraph (1) in a widely read and distributed medium;
and

1	"(3) shall provide the opportunity described in
2	paragraph (1) in accordance with any applicable
3	State and local law specifying how the comments
	State and local law specifying now the comments
4	may be received and how the comments may be re-
5	viewed by any member of the public.
6	"(f) Reporting.—
7	"(1) LOCAL REPORTING.—Each local edu-
8	cational agency receiving funds under subsection
9	(a)(1)(D) shall submit a report to the State edu-
10	cational agency, at such time as the State edu-
11	cational agency may require, describing the use of
12	such funds for—
13	"(A) school repair and renovation (and
14	construction, in the case of an impacted local
15	educational agency (as defined in subsection
16	(a)(3)));
17	"(B) activities under part B of the Individ-
18	uals with Disabilities Education Act (20 U.S.C.
19	1411 et seq.; and
20	"(C) technology activities that are carried
21	out in connection with school repair and renova-
22	tion, including the activities described in sub-
23	clauses (I) through (IV) of subsection
24	(b)(3)(A)(ii).

1	"(2) STATE REPORTING.—Each State edu-
2	cational agency shall submit to the Secretary of
3	Education, not later than December 31, 2003, a re-
4	port on the use of funds received under subsection
5	(a)(1)(D) by local educational agencies for—
6	"(A) school repair and renovation (and
7	construction, in the case of an impacted local
8	educational agency (as defined in subsection
9	(a)(3)));
10	"(B) activities under part B of the Individ-
11	uals with Disabilities Education Act (20 U.S.C.
12	1411 et seq.); and
13	"(C) technology activities that are carried
14	out in connection with school repair and renova-
15	tion, including the activities described in sub-
16	clauses (I) through (IV) of subsection
17	(b)(3)(A)(ii).
18	"(3) Additional reports.—Each entity re-
19	ceiving funds allocated under subsection $(a)(1)$ (A)
20	of (B) shall submit to the Secretary, not later than
21	December 31, 2003, a report on its uses of funds
22	under this section, in such form and containing such
23	information as the Secretary may require.
24	"(g) Applicability of Part B of IDEA.—If a
25	local educational agency uses funds received under this

section to carry out activities under part B of the Individ uals with Disabilities Education Act (20 U.S.C. 1411 et
 seq.), such part (including provisions respecting the par ticipation of private school children), and any other provi sion of law that applies to such part, shall apply to such
 use.

7 "(h) REALLOCATION.—If a State educational agency 8 does not apply for an allocation of funds under subsection 9 (a)(1)(D) for fiscal year 2002, or does not use its entire 10 allocation for such fiscal year, the Secretary may reallo-11 cate the amount of the State educational agency's alloca-12 tion (or the remainder thereof, as the case may be) to the 13 remaining State educational agencies in accordance with 14 subsection (a)(1)(D).

15 "(i) Participation of Private Schools.—

16 "(1) IN GENERAL.—Section 6402 shall apply to
17 subsection (b)(2) in the same manner as it applies
18 to activities under title VI, except that—

"(A) such section shall not apply with respect to the title to any real property renovated
or repaired with assistance provided under this
section;

23 "(B) the term 'services' as used in section
24 6402 with respect to funds under this section
25 shall be provided only to private, nonprofit ele-

1	mentary or secondary schools with a rate of
2	child poverty of at least 40 percent and may in-
3	clude for purposes of subsection $(b)(2)$ only—
4	"(i) modifications of school facilities
5	necessary to meet the standards applicable
6	to public schools under the Americans with
7	Disabilities Act of 1990 (42 U.S.C. 12101
8	et seq.);
9	"(ii) modifications of school facilities
10	necessary to meet the standards applicable
11	to public schools under section 504 of the
12	Rehabilitation Act of 1973 (29 U.S.C.
13	794); and
14	"(iii) asbestos abatement or removal
15	from school facilities; and
16	"(C) notwithstanding the requirements of
17	section 6402(b), expenditures for services pro-
18	vided using funds made available under sub-
19	section $(b)(2)$ shall be considered equal for pur-
20	poses of such section if the per-pupil expendi-
21	tures for services described in subparagraph
22	(B) for students enrolled in private nonprofit el-
23	ementary and secondary schools that have child
24	poverty rates of at least 40 percent are con-
25	sistent with the per-pupil expenditures under

this section for children enrolled in the public
 schools in the school district of the local edu cational agency receiving funds under this sec tion.

5 "(2) REMAINING FUNDS.—If the expenditure 6 for services described in paragraph (1)(B) is less 7 than the amount calculated under paragraph (1)(C) 8 because of insufficient need for such services, the re-9 mainder shall be available to the local educational 10 agency for renovation and repair of public school fa-11 cilities.

12 "(3) APPLICATION.—If any provision of this 13 section, or the application thereof, to any person or 14 circumstances is judicially determined to be invalid, 15 the provisions of the remainder of the section and 16 the application to other persons or circumstances 17 shall not be affected thereby.

18 "(j) DEFINITIONS.—For purposes of this section:

19 "(1) CHARTER SCHOOL.—The term 'charter
20 school' has the meaning given such term in section
21 10310(1).

"(2) POOR CHILDREN AND CHILD POVERTY.—
The terms 'poor children' and 'child poverty' refer to
children 5 to 17 years of age, inclusive, who are
from families with incomes below the poverty line

	200
1	(as defined by the Office of Management and Budg-
2	et and revised annually in accordance with section
3	673(2) of the Community Services Block Grant (42)
4	U.S.C. 9902(2)) applicable to a family of the size in-
5	volved for the most recent fiscal year for which data
6	satisfactory to the Secretary are available.
7	"(3) RURAL LOCAL EDUCATIONAL AGENCY
8	The term 'rural local educational agency' means a
9	local educational agency that the State determines is
10	located in a rural area using objective data and a
11	commonly employed definition of the term 'rural'.
12	"(4) STATE.—The term 'State' means each of
13	the 50 states, the District of Columbia, and the
14	Commonwealth of Puerto Rico.
15	"(k) Authorization of Appropriations.—There
16	is authorized to be appropriated to carry out this section,
17	\$1,600,000,000 for fiscal year 2002, and such sums as
18	may be necessary for each of fiscal years 2003 through
19	2006.".
20	SEC. 312. CHARTER SCHOOL CREDIT ENHANCEMENT INI-
21	TIATIVE.
22	Section 10331, as added by section 322 of the De-
23	partments of Labor, Health and Human Services, and

24 Education, and Related Agencies Appropriations Act,25 2001 (as enacted into law by section 1(a)(1) of Public Law

106-554) is amended by inserting before the period the
 following: ", and such sums as may be necessary for each
 of fiscal years 2002 through 2006".

4 CHAPTER 2—SCHOOL CONSTRUCTION

5 SEC. 321. SHORT TITLE.

6 This chapter may be cited as the "America's Better7 Classrooms Act of 2001".

8 SEC. 322. EXPANSION OF INCENTIVES FOR PUBLIC 9 SCHOOLS.

10 (a) IN GENERAL.—Chapter 1 of the Internal Rev11 enue Code of 1986 is amended by adding at the end the
12 following new subchapter:

13 "Subchapter X—Public School Modernization

14 **Provisions**

"Sec. 1400F. Credit to holders of qualified public school modernization bonds.
"Sec. 1400G. Qualified school construction bonds.
"Sec. 1400H. Qualified zone academy bonds.

15 "SEC. 1400F. CREDIT TO HOLDERS OF QUALIFIED PUBLIC
16 SCHOOL MODERNIZATION BONDS.

"(a) ALLOWANCE OF CREDIT.—In the case of a taxpayer who holds a qualified public school modernization
bond on a credit allowance date of such bond which occurs
during the taxable year, there shall be allowed as a credit
against the tax imposed by this chapter for such taxable
year an amount equal to the sum of the credits determined

1	under subsection (b) with respect to credit allowance dates
2	during such year on which the taxpayer holds such bond.
3	"(b) Amount of Credit.—
4	"(1) IN GENERAL.—The amount of the credit
5	determined under this subsection with respect to any
6	credit allowance date for a qualified public school
7	modernization bond is 25 percent of the annual
8	credit determined with respect to such bond.
9	"(2) ANNUAL CREDIT.—The annual credit de-
10	termined with respect to any qualified public school
11	modernization bond is the product of—
12	"(A) the applicable credit rate, multiplied
13	by
14	"(B) the outstanding face amount of the
15	bond.
16	"(3) Applicable credit rate.—For purposes
17	of paragraph (1), the applicable credit rate with re-
18	spect to an issue is the rate equal to an average
19	market yield (as of the day before the date of
20	issuance of the issue) on outstanding long-term cor-
21	porate debt obligations (determined under regula-
22	tions prescribed by the Secretary).
23	"(4) Special rule for issuance and re-
24	DEMPTION.—In the case of a bond which is issued
25	during the 3-month period ending on a credit allow-

ance date, the amount of the credit determined
under this subsection with respect to such credit al-
lowance date shall be a ratable portion of the credit
otherwise determined based on the portion of the 3-
month period during which the bond is outstanding.
A similar rule shall apply when the bond is re-
deemed.
"(c) Limitation Based on Amount of Tax.—
"(1) IN GENERAL.—The credit allowed under
subsection (a) for any taxable year shall not exceed
the excess of—
"(A) the sum of the regular tax liability
(as defined in section 26(b)) plus the tax im-
posed by section 55, over
"(B) the sum of the credits allowable
under part IV of subchapter A (other than sub-
part C thereof, relating to refundable credits).
"(2) CARRYOVER OF UNUSED CREDIT.—If the
credit allowable under subsection (a) exceeds the
limitation imposed by paragraph (1) for such taxable
year, such excess shall be carried to the succeeding
taxable year and added to the credit allowable under
subsection (a) for such taxable year.

"(d) Qualified Public School Modernization
BOND; CREDIT ALLOWANCE DATE.—For purposes of this
section—
"(1) QUALIFIED PUBLIC SCHOOL MODERNIZA-
TION BOND.—The term 'qualified public school mod-
ernization bond' means—
"(A) a qualified zone academy bond, and
"(B) a qualified school construction bond.
"(2) CREDIT ALLOWANCE DATE.—The term
'credit allowance date' means—
"(A) March 15,
"(B) June 15,
"(C) September 15, and
"(D) December 15.
Such term includes the last day on which the bond
is outstanding.
"(e) Other Definitions.—For purposes of this
subchapter—
"(1) Local educational agency.—The term
'local educational agency' has the meaning given to
such term by section 14101 of the Elementary and
Secondary Education Act of 1965. Such term in-
cludes the local educational agency that serves the
District of Columbia but does not include any other
State agency.

1	"(2) BOND.—The term 'bond' includes any ob-
2	ligation.
3	"(3) STATE.—The term 'State' includes the
4	District of Columbia and any possession of the
5	United States.
6	"(4) Public school facility.—The term
7	'public school facility' shall not include—
8	"(A) any stadium or other facility pri-
9	marily used for athletic contests or exhibitions
10	or other events for which admission is charged
11	to the general public, or
12	"(B) any facility which is not owned by a
13	State or local government or any agency or in-
14	strumentality of a State or local government.
15	"(f) Credit Included in Gross Income.—Gross
16	income includes the amount of the credit allowed to the
17	taxpayer under this section (determined without regard to
18	subsection (c)) and the amount so included shall be treat-
19	ed as interest income.
20	"(g) Bonds Held by Regulated Investment
21	COMPANIES.—If any qualified public school modernization
22	bond is held by a regulated investment company, the credit
23	determined under subsection (a) shall be allowed to share-
24	holders of such company under procedures prescribed by

the Secretary.

"(h) CREDITS MAY BE STRIPPED.—Under regula tions prescribed by the Secretary—

3 "(1) IN GENERAL.—There may be a separation 4 (including at issuance) of the ownership of a quali-5 fied public school modernization bond and the enti-6 tlement to the credit under this section with respect to such bond. In case of any such separation, the 7 8 credit under this section shall be allowed to the per-9 son who on the credit allowance date holds the in-10 strument evidencing the entitlement to the credit 11 and not to the holder of the bond.

"(2) CERTAIN RULES TO APPLY.—In the case
of a separation described in paragraph (1), the rules
of section 1286 shall apply to the qualified public
school modernization bond as if it were a stripped
bond and to the credit under this section as if it
were a stripped coupon.

18 "(i) TREATMENT FOR ESTIMATED TAX PURPOSES.—
19 Solely for purposes of sections 6654 and 6655, the credit
20 allowed by this section to a taxpayer by reason of holding
21 a qualified public school modernization bonds on a credit
22 allowance date shall be treated as if it were a payment
23 of estimated tax made by the taxpayer on such date.

24 "(j) CREDIT MAY BE TRANSFERRED.—Nothing in25 any law or rule of law shall be construed to limit the trans-

ferability of the credit allowed by this section through sale
 and repurchase agreements.

3 "(k) REPORTING.—Issuers of qualified public school
4 modernization bonds shall submit reports similar to the
5 reports required under section 149(e).

6 "(1) TERMINATION.—This section shall not apply to7 any bond issued after September 30, 2006.

8 "SEC. 1400G. QUALIFIED SCHOOL CONSTRUCTION BONDS.

9 "(a) QUALIFIED SCHOOL CONSTRUCTION BOND.— 10 For purposes of this subchapter, the term 'qualified school 11 construction bond' means any bond issued as part of an 12 issue if—

"(1) 95 percent or more of the proceeds of such 13 14 issue are to be used for the construction, rehabilita-15 tion, or repair of a public school facility or for the 16 acquisition of land on which such a facility is to be 17 constructed with part of the proceeds of such issue, 18 "(2) the bond is issued by a State or local gov-19 ernment within the jurisdiction of which such school 20 is located,

21 "(3) the issuer designates such bond for pur-22 poses of this section, and

23 "(4) the term of each bond which is part of24 such issue does not exceed 15 years.

1

"(b) LIMITATION ON AMOUNT OF BONDS DES-

2 IGNATED.—The maximum aggregate face amount of bonds issued during any calendar year which may be des-3 4 ignated under subsection (a) by any issuer shall not exceed 5 the sum of— 6 "(1) the limitation amount allocated under subsection (d) for such calendar year to such issuer, 7 8 and 9 "(2) if such issuer is a large local educational 10 agency (as defined in subsection (e)(4)) or is issuing 11 on behalf of such an agency, the limitation amount 12 allocated under subsection (e) for such calendar year 13 to such agency. 14 "(c) NATIONAL LIMITATION ON AMOUNT OF BONDS 15 DESIGNATED.—There is a national qualified school construction bond limitation for each calendar year. Such lim-16 itation is— 17 18 "(1) \$11,000,000,000 for 2002, 19 "(2) \$11,000,000,000 for 2003, and 20 "(3) except as provided in subsection (f), zero 21 after 2003. "(d) 60 PERCENT OF LIMITATION ALLOCATED 22 23 Among States.— 24 "(1) IN GENERAL.—60 percent of the limitation 25 applicable under subsection (c) for any calendar year

1	shall be allocated by the Secretary among the States
2	in proportion to the respective numbers of children
3	in each State who have attained age 5 but not age
4	18 for the most recent fiscal year ending before such
5	calendar year. The limitation amount allocated to a
6	State under the preceding sentence shall be allocated
7	by the State to issuers within such State and such
8	allocations may be made only if there is an approved
9	State application.
10	"(2) MINIMUM ALLOCATIONS TO STATES.—
11	"(A) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary shall
12	adjust the allocations under this subsection for
13	any calendar year for each State to the extent
14	necessary to ensure that the sum of—
15	"(i) the amount allocated to such
16	State under this subsection for such year,
17	and
18	"(ii) the aggregate amounts allocated
19	under subsection (e) to large local edu-
20	cational agencies in such State for such
21	year,
22	is not less than an amount equal to such
23	State's minimum percentage of the amount to
24	be allocated under paragraph (1) for the cal-
25	endar year.

"(B) MINIMUM PERCENTAGE.—A State's
minimum percentage for any calendar year is
the minimum percentage described in section
1124(d) of the Elementary and Secondary Education Act of 1965 (20 U.S.C. 6334(d)) for
such State for the most recent fiscal year ending before such calendar year.

8 "(3) ALLOCATIONS ТО CERTAIN POSSES-9 SIONS.—The amount to be allocated under para-10 graph (1) to any possession of the United States 11 other than Puerto Rico shall be the amount which 12 would have been allocated if all allocations under 13 paragraph (1) were made on the basis of respective 14 populations of individuals below the poverty line (as 15 defined by the Office of Management and Budget). 16 In making other allocations, the amount to be allo-17 cated under paragraph (1) shall be reduced by the 18 aggregate amount allocated under this paragraph to 19 possessions of the United States.

20 "(4) ALLOCATIONS FOR INDIAN SCHOOLS.—The
21 provisions of section 1400J shall apply with respect
22 to the construction, rehabilitation, and repair of
23 schools funded by the Bureau of Indian Affairs. No
24 funds may be allocated under this section for such
25 schools.

2	purposes of paragraph (1), the term 'approved State
3	application' means an application which is approved
4	by the Secretary of Education and which includes—
5	"(A) the results of a recent publicly-avail-
6	able survey (undertaken by the State with the
7	involvement of local education officials, mem-
8	bers of the public, and experts in school con-
9	struction and management) of such State's
10	needs for public school facilities, including de-
11	scriptions of—
12	"(i) health and safety problems at
13	such facilities,
14	"(ii) the capacity of public schools in
15	the State to house projected enrollments,
16	and
17	"(iii) the extent to which the public
18	schools in the State offer the physical in-
19	frastructure needed to provide a high-qual-
20	ity education to all students, and
21	"(B) a description of how the State will al-
22	locate to local educational agencies, or other-
23	wise use, its allocation under this subsection to
24	address the needs identified under subpara-

1	graph (A), including a description of how it
2	will—
3	"(i) ensure that the needs of both
4	rural and urban areas will be recognized,
5	"(ii) give highest priority to localities
6	with the greatest needs, as demonstrated
7	by inadequate school facilities coupled with
8	a low level of resources to meet those
9	needs,
10	"(iii) use its allocation under this sub-
11	section to assist localities that lack the fis-
12	cal capacity to issue bonds on their own,
13	and
14	"(iv) ensure that its allocation under
15	this subsection is used only to supplement,
16	and not supplant, the amount of school
17	construction, rehabilitation, and repair in
18	the State that would have occurred in the
19	absence of such allocation.
20	Any allocation under paragraph (1) by a State shall
21	be binding if such State reasonably determined that
22	the allocation was in accordance with the plan ap-
23	proved under this paragraph.
24	"(e) 40 Percent of Limitation Allocated
25	Among Largest School Districts.—

1 "(1) IN GENERAL.—40 percent of the limitation 2 applicable under subsection (c) for any calendar year 3 shall be allocated under paragraph (2) by the Sec-4 retary among local educational agencies which are 5 large local educational agencies for such year. No 6 qualified school construction bond may be issued by reason of an allocation to a large local educational 7 8 agency under the preceding sentence unless such 9 agency has an approved local application.

10 "(2) ALLOCATION FORMULA.—The amount to 11 be allocated under paragraph (1) for any calendar 12 year shall be allocated among large local educational 13 agencies in proportion to the respective amounts 14 each such agency received for Basic Grants under 15 subpart 2 of part A of title I of the Elementary and 16 Secondary Education Act of 1965 (20 U.S.C. 6331) 17 et seq.) for the most recent fiscal year ending before 18 such calendar year.

"(3) ALLOCATION OF UNUSED LIMITATION TO
STATE.—The amount allocated under this subsection
to a large local educational agency for any calendar
year may be reallocated by such agency to the State
in which such agency is located for such calendar
year. Any amount reallocated to a State under the

preceding sentence may be allocated as provided in
 subsection (d)(1).

3 "(4) LARGE LOCAL EDUCATIONAL AGENCY.—
4 For purposes of this section, the term 'large local
5 educational agency' means, with respect to a cal6 endar year, any local educational agency if such
7 agency is—

8 "(A) among the 100 local educational 9 agencies with the largest numbers of children 10 aged 5 through 17 from families living below 11 the poverty level, as determined by the Sec-12 retary using the most recent data available 13 from the Department of Commerce that are 14 satisfactory to the Secretary, or

"(B) 1 of not more than 25 local edu-15 16 cational agencies (other than those described in 17 subparagraph (A)) that the Secretary of Edu-18 cation determines (based on the most recent 19 data available satisfactory to the Secretary) are 20 in particular need of assistance, based on a low 21 level of resources for school construction, a high level of enrollment growth, or such other factors 22 23 as the Secretary deems appropriate.

24 "(5) APPROVED LOCAL APPLICATION.—For
25 purposes of paragraph (1), the term 'approved local

1	application' means an application which is approved
2	by the Secretary of Education and which includes—
3	"(A) the results of a recent publicly-avail-
4	able survey (undertaken by the local educational
5	agency or the State with the involvement of
6	school officials, members of the public, and ex-
7	perts in school construction and management)
8	of such agency's needs for public school facili-
9	ties, including descriptions of—
10	"(i) the overall condition of the local
11	educational agency's school facilities, in-
12	cluding health and safety problems,
13	"(ii) the capacity of the agency's
14	schools to house projected enrollments, and
15	"(iii) the extent to which the agency's
16	schools offer the physical infrastructure
17	needed to provide a high-quality education
18	to all students,
19	"(B) a description of how the local edu-
20	cational agency will use its allocation under this
21	subsection to address the needs identified under
22	subparagraph (A), and
23	"(C) a description of how the local edu-
24	cational agency will ensure that its allocation
25	under this subsection is used only to supple-

	210
1	ment, and not supplant, the amount of school
2	construction, rehabilitation, or repair in the lo-
3	cality that would have occurred in the absence
4	of such allocation.
5	A rule similar to the rule of the last sentence of sub-
6	section (d)(6) shall apply for purposes of this para-
7	graph.
8	"(f) CARRYOVER OF UNUSED LIMITATION.—If for
9	any calendar year—
10	((1) the amount allocated under subsection (d)
11	to any State, exceeds
12	((2) the amount of bonds issued during such
13	year which are designated under subsection (a) pur-
14	suant to such allocation,
15	the limitation amount under such subsection for such
16	State for the following calendar year shall be increased
17	by the amount of such excess. A similar rule shall apply
18	to the amounts allocated under subsection $(d)(5)$ or (e) .
19	"(g) Special Rules Relating to Arbitrage.—
20	"(1) IN GENERAL.—A bond shall not be treated
21	as failing to meet the requirement of subsection
22	(a)(1) solely by reason of the fact that the proceeds
23	of the issue of which such bond is a part are in-
24	vested for a temporary period (but not more than 36

1	months) until such proceeds are needed for the pur-
2	pose for which such issue was issued.
3	"(2) BINDING COMMITMENT REQUIREMENT.—
4	Paragraph (1) shall apply to an issue only if, as of
5	the date of issuance, there is a reasonable expecta-
б	tion that—
7	"(A) at least 10 percent of the proceeds of
8	the issue will be spent within the 6-month pe-
9	riod beginning on such date for the purpose for
10	which such issue was issued, and
11	"(B) the remaining proceeds of the issue
12	will be spent with due diligence for such pur-
13	pose.
14	"(3) EARNINGS ON PROCEEDS.—Any earnings
15	on proceeds during the temporary period shall be
16	treated as proceeds of the issue for purposes of ap-
17	plying subsection $(a)(1)$ and paragraph (1) of this
18	subsection.
19	"SEC. 1400H. QUALIFIED ZONE ACADEMY BONDS.
20	"(a) Qualified Zone Academy Bond.—For pur-
21	poses of this subchapter—
22	"(1) IN GENERAL.—The term 'qualified zone
23	academy bond' means any bond issued as part of an
24	issue if—

1	"(A) 95 percent or more of the proceeds of
2	such issue are to be used for a qualified pur-
3	pose with respect to a qualified zone academy
4	established by a local educational agency,
5	"(B) the bond is issued by a State or local
6	government within the jurisdiction of which
7	such academy is located,
8	"(C) the issuer—
9	"(i) designates such bond for purposes
10	of this section,
11	"(ii) certifies that it has written as-
12	surances that the private business con-
13	tribution requirement of paragraph (2) will
14	be met with respect to such academy, and
15	"(iii) certifies that it has the written
16	approval of the local educational agency
17	for such bond issuance, and
18	"(D) the term of each bond which is part
19	of such issue does not exceed 15 years.
20	Rules similar to the rules of section $1400G(g)$ shall
21	apply for purposes of paragraph (1).
22	"(2) Private business contribution re-
23	QUIREMENT.—
24	"(A) IN GENERAL.—For purposes of para-
25	graph (1), the private business contribution re-

1	quirement of this paragraph is met with respect
2	to any issue if the local educational agency that
3	established the qualified zone academy has writ-
4	ten commitments from private entities to make
5	qualified contributions having a present value
6	(as of the date of issuance of the issue) of not
7	less than 10 percent of the proceeds of the
8	issue.
9	"(B) QUALIFIED CONTRIBUTIONS.—For
10	purposes of subparagraph (A), the term 'quali-
11	fied contribution' means any contribution (of a
12	type and quality acceptable to the local edu-
13	cational agency) of—
14	"(i) equipment for use in the qualified
15	zone academy (including state-of-the-art
16	technology and vocational equipment),
17	"(ii) technical assistance in developing
18	curriculum or in training teachers in order
19	to promote appropriate market driven tech-
20	nology in the classroom,
21	"(iii) services of employees as volun-
22	teer mentors,
23	"(iv) internships, field trips, or other
24	educational opportunities outside the acad-
25	emy for students, or
"(v) any other property or service 1 2 specified by the local educational agency. 3 "(3) QUALIFIED ZONE ACADEMY.—The term 'qualified zone academy' means any public school (or 4 5 academic program within a public school) which is 6 established by and operated under the supervision of 7 a local educational agency to provide education or 8 training below the postsecondary level if— 9 "(A) such public school or program (as the 10 case may be) is designed in cooperation with 11 business to enhance the academic curriculum, 12 increase graduation and employment rates, and 13 better prepare students for the rigors of college 14 and the increasingly complex workforce, 15 "(B) students in such public school or pro-16 gram (as the case may be) will be subject to the 17 same academic standards and assessments as 18 other students educated by the local educational 19 agency, 20 "(C) the comprehensive education plan of 21 such public school or program is approved by 22 the local educational agency, and 23 "(D)(i) such public school is located in an 24 empowerment zone or enterprise community 25 (including any such zone or community des-

253

1	ignated after the date of the enactment of this
2	section), or
3	"(ii) there is a reasonable expectation (as
4	of the date of issuance of the bonds) that at
5	least 35 percent of the students attending such
6	school or participating in such program (as the
7	case may be) will be eligible for free or reduced-
8	cost lunches under the school lunch program es-
9	tablished under the National School Lunch Act.
10	"(4) QUALIFIED PURPOSE.—The term 'quali-
11	fied purpose' means, with respect to any qualified
12	zone academy—
13	"(A) constructing, rehabilitating, or repair-
14	ing the public school facility in which the acad-
15	emy is established,
16	"(B) acquiring the land on which such fa-
17	cility is to be constructed with part of the pro-
18	ceeds of such issue,
19	"(C) providing equipment for use at such
20	academy,
21	"(D) developing course materials for edu-
22	cation to be provided at such academy, and
23	"(E) training teachers and other school
24	personnel in such academy.

1	"(b) Limitations on Amount of Bonds Des-
2	IGNATED.—
3	"(1) IN GENERAL.—There is a national zone
4	academy bond limitation for each calendar year.
5	Such limitation is—
6	"(A) \$400,000,000 for 1999,
7	"(B) \$400,000,000 for 2000,
8	"(C) \$400,000,000 for 2001,
9	"(D) $1,400,000,000$ for 2002,
10	"(E) $$1,400,000,000$ for 2003, and
11	"(F) except as provided in paragraph (3) ,
12	zero after 2003.
13	"(2) Allocation of limitation.—
14	"(A) Allocation among states.—
15	"(i) 1999, 2000, AND 2001 LIMITA-
16	TIONS.—The national zone academy bond
17	limitations for calendar years 1999, 2000,
18	and 2001 shall be allocated by the Sec-
19	retary among the States on the basis of
20	their respective populations of individuals
21	below the poverty line (as defined by the
22	Office of Management and Budget).
23	"(ii) LIMITATION AFTER 2001.—The
24	national zone academy bond limitation for
25	any calendar year after 2001 shall be allo-

1	cated by the Secretary among the States in
2	proportion to the respective amounts each
3	such State received for Basic Grants under
4	subpart 2 of part A of title I of the Ele-
5	mentary and Secondary Education Act of
6	1965 (20 U.S.C. 6331 et seq.) for the
7	most recent fiscal year ending before such
8	calendar year.
9	"(B) Allocation to local edu-
10	CATIONAL AGENCIES.—The limitation amount
11	allocated to a State under subparagraph (A)
12	shall be allocated by the State to qualified zone
13	academies within such State.
14	"(C) DESIGNATION SUBJECT TO LIMITA-
15	TION AMOUNT.—The maximum aggregate face
16	amount of bonds issued during any calendar
17	year which may be designated under subsection
18	(a) with respect to any qualified zone academy
19	shall not exceed the limitation amount allocated
20	to such academy under subparagraph (B) for
21	such calendar year.
22	"(3) CARRYOVER OF UNUSED LIMITATION.—If
23	for any calendar year—
24	"(A) the limitation amount under this sub-
25	section for any State, exceeds

1	"(B) the amount of bonds issued during
2	such year which are designated under sub-
3	section (a) (or the corresponding provisions of
4	prior law) with respect to qualified zone acad-
5	emies within such State,
6	the limitation amount under this subsection for such
7	State for the following calendar year shall be in-
8	creased by the amount of such excess."
9	(b) Reporting.—Subsection (d) of section 6049 of
10	such Code (relating to returns regarding payments of in-
11	terest) is amended by adding at the end the following new
12	paragraph:
13	"(8) Reporting of credit on qualified
14	PUBLIC SCHOOL MODERNIZATION BONDS.—
15	"(A) IN GENERAL.—For purposes of sub-
16	section (a), the term 'interest' includes amounts
17	includible in gross income under section
18	1400F(f) and such amounts shall be treated as
19	paid on the credit allowance date (as defined in
20	section $1400F(d)(2)$).
21	"(B) REPORTING TO CORPORATIONS,
22	ETC.—Except as otherwise provided in regula-
23	tions, in the case of any interest described in
24	subparagraph (A) of this paragraph, subsection
25	(b)(4) of this section shall be applied without

1	regard to subparagraphs (A), (H), (I), (J), (K),
2	and (L)(i).
3	"(C) Regulatory Authority.—The Sec-
4	retary may prescribe such regulations as are
5	necessary or appropriate to carry out the pur-
6	poses of this paragraph, including regulations
7	which require more frequent or more detailed
8	reporting."
9	(c) Conforming Amendments.—
10	(1) Subchapter U of chapter 1 of such Code is
11	amended by striking part IV, by redesignating part
12	V as part IV, and by redesignating section $1397F$
13	as section 1397E.
14	(2) The table of subchapters for chapter 1 of
15	such Code is amended by adding at the end the fol-
16	lowing new item:
	"Subchapter X. Public school modernization provisions."
17	(3) The table of parts of subchapter U of chap-
18	ter 1 of such Code is amended by striking the last
19	2 items and inserting the following item:
	"Part IV. Regulations."
20	(e) Effective Dates.—
21	(1) IN GENERAL.—Except as otherwise pro-
22	vided in this subsection, the amendments made by
23	this section shall apply to obligations issued after
24	December 31, 2001.

1	(2) Repeal of restriction on zone acad-
2	EMY BOND HOLDERS.—In the case of bonds to
3	which section 1397E of the Internal Revenue Code
4	of 1986 (as in effect before the date of the enact-
5	ment of this Act) applies, the limitation of such sec-
6	tion to eligible taxpayers (as defined in subsection
7	(d)(6) of such section) shall not apply after the date
8	of the enactment of this Act.
9	SEC. 323. APPLICATION OF CERTAIN LABOR STANDARDS
10	ON CONSTRUCTION PROJECTS FINANCED
11	UNDER PUBLIC SCHOOL MODERNIZATION
12	PROGRAM.
13	Section 439 of the General Education Provisions Act
	Section 439 of the General Education Provisions Act (relating to labor standards) is amended—
13	
13 14	(relating to labor standards) is amended—
13 14 15	(relating to labor standards) is amended—(1) by inserting "(a)" before "All laborers and
13 14 15 16	(relating to labor standards) is amended— (1) by inserting "(a)" before "All laborers and mechanics", and
13 14 15 16 17	 (relating to labor standards) is amended— (1) by inserting "(a)" before "All laborers and mechanics", and (2) by adding at the end the following:
 13 14 15 16 17 18 	<pre>(relating to labor standards) is amended— (1) by inserting "(a)" before "All laborers and mechanics", and (2) by adding at the end the following: "(b)(1) For purposes of this section, the term 'appli-</pre>
 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 	 (relating to labor standards) is amended— (1) by inserting "(a)" before "All laborers and mechanics", and (2) by adding at the end the following: "(b)(1) For purposes of this section, the term 'applicable program' also includes the qualified zone academy
 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 	 (relating to labor standards) is amended— (1) by inserting "(a)" before "All laborers and mechanics", and (2) by adding at the end the following: "(b)(1) For purposes of this section, the term 'applicable program' also includes the qualified zone academy bond provisions enacted by section 226 of the Taxpayer
 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 	 (relating to labor standards) is amended— (1) by inserting "(a)" before "All laborers and mechanics", and (2) by adding at the end the following: "(b)(1) For purposes of this section, the term 'applicable program' also includes the qualified zone academy bond provisions enacted by section 226 of the Taxpayer Relief Act of 1997 and the program established by section

"(A) in the awarding of contracts, give priority
 to contractors with substantial numbers of employ ees residing in the local education area to be served
 by the school being constructed; and

5 "(B) include in the construction contract for 6 such school a requirement that the contractor give 7 priority in hiring new workers to individuals residing 8 in such local education area.

9 "(3) In the case of a program described in paragraph 10 (1), nothing in this subsection or subsection (a) shall be 11 construed to deny any tax credit allowed under such pro-12 gram. If amounts are required to be withheld from con-13 tractors to pay wages to which workers are entitled, such 14 amounts shall be treated as expended for construction pur-15 poses in determining whether the requirements of such program are met.". 16

17 SEC. 324. EMPLOYMENT AND TRAINING ACTIVITIES RELAT-

18 ING TO CONSTRUCTION OR RECONSTRUC19 TION OF PUBLIC SCHOOL FACILITIES.

20 (a) IN GENERAL.—Section 134 of the Workforce In21 vestment Act of 1998 (29 U.S.C. 2864) is amended by
22 adding at the end the following:

23 "(f) LOCAL EMPLOYMENT AND TRAINING ACTIVI24 TIES RELATING TO CONSTRUCTION OR RECONSTRUCTION
25 OF PUBLIC SCHOOL FACILITIES.—

1	"(1) IN GENERAL.—In order to provide training
2	services related to construction or reconstruction of
3	public school facilities receiving funding assistance
4	under an applicable program, each State shall estab-
5	lish a specialized program of training meeting the
6	following requirements:
7	"(A) The specialized program provides
8	training for jobs in the construction industry.
9	"(B) The program provides trained work-
10	ers for projects for the construction or recon-
11	struction of public school facilities receiving
12	funding assistance under an applicable pro-
13	gram.
14	"(C) The program ensures that skilled
15	workers (residing in the area to be served by
16	the school facilities) will be available for the
17	construction or reconstruction work.
18	"(2) COORDINATION.—The specialized program
19	established under paragraph (1) shall be integrated
20	with other activities under this Act, with the activi-
21	ties carried out under the National Apprenticeship
22	Act of 1937 by the State Apprenticeship Council or
23	through the Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training
24	in the Department of Labor, as appropriate, and
25	with activities carried out under the Carl D. Perkins

1 Vocational and Technical Education Act of 1998. 2 Nothing in this subsection shall be construed to re-3 quire services duplicative of those referred to in the 4 preceding sentence. "(3) APPLICABLE PROGRAM.—In this sub-5 6 section, the term 'applicable program' has the mean-7 ing given the term in section 439(b) of the General 8 Education Provisions Act (relating to labor stand-9 ards).". 10 (b) STATE PLAN.—Section 112(b)(17)(A) of the 11 Workforce Investment Act of 1998 (29)U.S.C. 12 2822(b)(17)(A) is amended— 13 (1) in clause (iii), by striking "and" at the end; 14 (2) by redesignating clause (iv) as clause (v); 15 and 16 (3) by inserting after clause (iii) the following: 17 "(iv) how the State will establish and 18 carry out a specialized program of training 19 under section 134(f); and". 20 SEC. 325. INDIAN SCHOOL CONSTRUCTION. 21 (a) DEFINITIONS.—In this section: (1) BUREAU.—The term "Bureau" means the 22 23 Bureau of Indian Affairs of the Department of the Interior. 24

(2) INDIAN.—The term "Indian" means any in dividual who is a member of a tribe.

3 (3) SECRETARY.—The term "Secretary" means
4 the Secretary of the Interior.

(4) TRIBAL SCHOOL.—The term "tribal school" 5 6 means an elementary school, secondary school, or 7 dormitory that is operated by a tribal organization 8 or the Bureau for the education of Indian children 9 and that receives financial assistance for its oper-10 ation under an appropriation for the Bureau under 11 section 102, 103(a), or 208 of the Indian Self-Deter-12 mination and Education Assistance Act (25 U.S.C. 13 450f, 450h(a), and 458d) or under the Tribally Con-14 trolled Schools Act of 1988 (25 U.S.C. 2501 et seq.) 15 under a contract, a grant, or an agreement, or for 16 a Bureau-operated school.

17 (5) TRIBE.—The term "tribe" has the meaning
18 given the term "Indian tribal government" by sec19 tion 7701(a)(40) of the Internal Revenue Code of
20 1986, including the application of section 7871(d) of
21 such Code. Such term includes any consortium of
22 tribes approved by the Secretary.

23 (b) Issuance of Bonds.—

24 (1) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary shall establish25 a pilot program under which eligible tribes have the

1	authority to issue qualified tribal school moderniza-
2	tion bonds to provide funding for the construction,
3	rehabilitation, or repair of tribal schools, including
4	the advance planning and design thereof.
5	(2) ELIGIBILITY.—
6	(A) IN GENERAL.—To be eligible to issue
7	any qualified tribal school modernization bond
8	under the program under paragraph (1) , a tribe
9	shall—
10	(i) prepare and submit to the Sec-
11	retary a plan of construction that meets
12	the requirements of subparagraph (B);
13	(ii) provide for quarterly and final in-
14	spection of the project by the Bureau; and
15	(iii) pledge that the facilities financed
16	by such bond will be used primarily for ele-
17	mentary and secondary educational pur-
18	poses for not less than the period such
19	bond remains outstanding.
20	(B) PLAN OF CONSTRUCTION.—A plan of
21	construction meets the requirements of this
22	subparagraph if such plan—
23	(i) contains a description of the con-
24	struction to be undertaken with funding

1 provided under a qualified tribal school 2 modernization bond; 3 (ii) demonstrates that a comprehen-4 sive survey has been undertaken con-5 cerning the construction needs of the tribal 6 school involved; 7 (iii) contains assurances that funding 8 under the bond will be used only for the 9 activities described in the plan; 10 (iv) contains response to the evalua-11 tion criteria contained in Instructions and 12 Application for Replacement School Con-13 struction, Revision 6, dated February 6, 14 1999; and 15 (v) contains any other reasonable and 16 related information determined appropriate 17 by the Secretary. 18 (C) PRIORITY.—In determining whether a 19 tribe is eligible to participate in the program 20 under this subsection, the Secretary shall give 21 priority to tribes that, as demonstrated by the 22 relevant plans of construction, will fund 23 projects-24 (i) described in the Education Facili-25 ties Replacement Construction Priorities

1	List as of FY 2000 of the Bureau of In-
2	dian Affairs (65 Fed. Reg. 4623–4624);
3	(ii) described in any subsequent prior-
4	ities list published in the Federal Register;
5	or
6	(iii) which meet the criteria for rank-
7	ing schools as described in Instructions
8	and Application for Replacement School
9	Construction, Revision 6, dated February
10	6, 1999.
11	(D) Advance planning and design
12	FUNDING.—A tribe may propose in its plan of
13	construction to receive advance planning and
14	design funding from the tribal school mod-
15	ernization escrow account established under
16	paragraph (6)(B). Before advance planning and
17	design funds are allocated from the escrow ac-
18	count, the tribe shall agree to issue qualified
19	tribal school modernization bonds after the re-
20	ceipt of such funds and agree as a condition of
21	each bond issuance that the tribe will deposit
22	into such account or a fund managed by the
23	trustee as described in paragraph $(4)(C)$ an
24	amount equal to the amount of such funds re-
25	ceived from the escrow account.

1	(3) PERMISSIBLE ACTIVITIES.—In addition to
2	the use of funds permitted under paragraph (1), a
3	tribe may use amounts received through the issuance
4	of a qualified tribal school modernization bond to—
5	(A) enter into and make payments under
6	contracts with licensed and bonded architects,
7	engineers, and construction firms in order to
8	determine the needs of the tribal school and for
9	the design and engineering of the school;
10	(B) enter into and make payments under
11	contracts with financial advisors, underwriters,
12	attorneys, trustees, and other professionals who
13	would be able to provide assistance to the tribe
14	in issuing bonds; and
15	(C) carry out other activities determined
16	appropriate by the Secretary.
17	(4) Bond trustee.—
18	(A) IN GENERAL.—Notwithstanding any
19	other provision of law, any qualified tribal
20	school modernization bond issued by a tribe
21	under this subsection shall be subject to a trust
22	agreement between the tribe and a trustee.
23	(B) TRUSTEE.—Any bank or trust com-
24	pany that meets requirements established by

	-00
1	the Secretary may be designated as a trustee
2	under subparagraph (A).
3	(C) Content of trust agreement.—A
4	trust agreement entered into by a tribe under
5	this paragraph shall specify that the trustee,
6	with respect to any bond issued under this sub-
7	section shall—
8	(i) act as a repository for the proceeds
9	of the bond;
10	(ii) make payments to bondholders;
11	(iii) receive, as a condition to the
12	issuance of such bond, a transfer of funds
13	from the tribal school modernization es-
14	crow account established under paragraph
15	(6)(B) or from other funds furnished by or
16	on behalf of the tribe in an amount, which
17	together with interest earnings from the
18	investment of such funds in obligations of
19	or fully guaranteed by the United States or
20	from other investments authorized by para-
21	graph (10) , will produce moneys sufficient
22	to timely pay in full the entire principal
23	amount of such bond on the stated matu-
24	rity date therefore;

1	(iv) invest the funds received pursuant
2	to clause (iii) as provided by such clause;
3	and
4	(v) hold and invest the funds in a seg-
5	regated fund or account under the agree-
6	ment, which fund or account shall be ap-
7	plied solely to the payment of the costs of
8	items described in paragraph (3).
9	(D) REQUIREMENTS FOR MAKING DIRECT
10	PAYMENTS.—
11	(i) IN GENERAL.—Notwithstanding
12	any other provision of law, the trustee
13	shall make any payment referred to in sub-
14	paragraph (C)(v) in accordance with re-
15	quirements that the tribe shall prescribe in
16	the trust agreement entered into under
17	subparagraph (C). Before making a pay-
18	ment to a contractor under subparagraph
19	(C)(v), the trustee shall require an inspec-
20	tion of the project by a local financial in-
21	stitution or an independent inspecting ar-
22	chitect or engineer, to ensure the comple-
23	tion of the project.
24	(ii) CONTRACTS.—Each contract re-
25	ferred to in paragraph (3) shall specify, or

be renegotiated to specify, that payments
under the contract shall be made in ac-
cordance with this paragraph.
(5) PAYMENTS OF PRINCIPAL AND INTEREST.—
(A) PRINCIPAL.—No principal payments
on any qualified tribal school modernization
bond shall be required until the final, stated
maturity of such bond, which stated maturity
shall be within 15 years from the date of
issuance. Upon the expiration of such period,
the entire outstanding principal under the bond
shall become due and payable.
(B) INTEREST.—In lieu of interest on a
qualified tribal school modernization bond there
shall be awarded a tax credit under section
1400F of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986.
(6) Bond guarantees.—
(A) IN GENERAL.—Payment of the prin-
cipal portion of a qualified tribal school mod-
ernization bond issued under this subsection
shall be guaranteed solely by amounts deposited
with each respective bond trustee as described
in paragraph (4)(C)(iii).
(B) ESTABLISHMENT OF ACCOUNT.—

270

1	(i) IN GENERAL.—Notwithstanding
2	any other provision of law, beginning in
3	fiscal year 2002, from amounts made
4	available for school replacement under the
5	construction account of the Bureau, the
6	Secretary is authorized to deposit not more
7	than \$30,000,000 each fiscal year into a
8	tribal school modernization escrow account.
9	(ii) PAYMENTS.—The Secretary shall
10	use any amounts deposited in the escrow
11	account under clauses (i) and (iii) to make
12	payments to trustees appointed and acting
13	pursuant to paragraph (4) or to make pay-
14	ments described in paragraph $(2)(D)$.
15	(iii) TRANSFERS OF EXCESS PRO-
16	CEEDS.—Excess proceeds held under any
17	trust agreement that are not needed for
18	any of the purposes described in clauses
19	(iii) and (v) of paragraph $(4)(C)$ shall be
20	transferred, from time to time, by the
21	trustee for deposit into the tribal school
22	modernization escrow account.
23	(7) LIMITATIONS.—
24	(A) Obligation to repay.—Notwith-
25	standing any other provision of law, the prin-

1	cipal amount on any qualified tribal school
2	modernization bond issued under this sub-
3	section shall be repaid only to the extent of any
4	escrowed funds furnished under paragraph
5	(4)(C)(iii). No qualified tribal school moderniza-
6	tion bond issued by a tribe shall be an obliga-
7	tion of, nor shall payment of the principal
8	thereof be guaranteed by, the United States.
9	(B) LAND AND FACILITIES.—Any land or
10	facilities purchased or improved with amounts
11	derived from qualified tribal school moderniza-
12	tion bonds issued under this subsection shall
13	not be mortgaged or used as collateral for such
14	bonds.
15	(8) SALE OF BONDS.—Qualified tribal school
16	modernization bonds may be sold at a purchase price
17	equal to, in excess of, or at a discount from the par
18	amount thereof.
19	(9) TREATMENT OF TRUST AGREEMENT EARN-
20	INGS.—Any amounts earned through the investment
21	of funds under the control of a trustee under any
22	trust agreement described in paragraph (4) shall not
23	be subject to Federal income tax.
24	(10) INVESTMENT OF SINKING FUNDS.—Any
25	sinking fund established for the purpose of the pay-

1	ment of principal on a qualified tribal school mod-
2	ernization bond shall be invested in obligations
3	issued by or guaranteed by the United States or in
4	such other assets as the Secretary of the Treasury
5	may by regulation allow.
6	(c) EXPANSION OF INCENTIVES FOR TRIBAL
7	SCHOOLS.—Chapter 1 of the Internal Revenue Code of
8	1986 (as amended by section 322) is further amended by
9	adding at the end the following new subchapter:
10	"Subchapter XI—Tribal School
11	Modernization Provisions
	"Sec. 1400J. Credit to holders of qualified tribal school modernization bonds.
12	"SEC. 1400J. CREDIT TO HOLDERS OF QUALIFIED TRIBAL
13	SCHOOL MODERNIZATION BONDS.
14	"(a) Allowance of Credit.—In the case of a tax-
15	payer who holds a qualified tribal school modernization
16	bond on a credit allowance date of such bond which occurs
17	
	during the taxable year, there shall be allowed as a credit
18	during the taxable year, there shall be allowed as a credit against the tax imposed by this chapter for such taxable
19	against the tax imposed by this chapter for such taxable
19 20	against the tax imposed by this chapter for such taxable year an amount equal to the sum of the credits determined
 18 19 20 21 22 	against the tax imposed by this chapter for such taxable year an amount equal to the sum of the credits determined under subsection (b) with respect to credit allowance dates

23 "(1) IN GENERAL.—The amount of the credit24 determined under this subsection with respect to any

1	credit allowance date for a qualified tribal school
2	modernization bond is 25 percent of the annual
3	credit determined with respect to such bond.
4	"(2) ANNUAL CREDIT.—The annual credit de-
5	termined with respect to any qualified tribal school
6	modernization bond is the product of—
7	"(A) the applicable credit rate, multiplied
8	by
9	"(B) the outstanding face amount of the
10	bond.
11	"(3) Applicable credit rate.—For purposes
12	of paragraph (1), the applicable credit rate with re-
13	spect to an issue is the rate equal to an average
14	market yield (as of the date of sale of the issue) on
15	outstanding long-term corporate obligations (as de-
16	termined by the Secretary).
17	"(4) Special rule for issuance and re-
18	DEMPTION.—In the case of a bond which is issued
19	during the 3-month period ending on a credit allow-
20	ance date, the amount of the credit determined
21	under this subsection with respect to such credit al-
22	lowance date shall be a ratable portion of the credit
23	otherwise determined based on the portion of the 3-
24	month period during which the bond is outstanding.

1	A similar rule shall apply when the bond is re-
2	deemed.
3	"(c) Limitation Based on Amount of Tax.—
4	"(1) IN GENERAL.—The credit allowed under
5	subsection (a) for any taxable year shall not exceed
6	the excess of—
7	"(A) the sum of the regular tax liability
8	(as defined in section 26(b)) plus the tax im-
9	posed by section 55, over
10	"(B) the sum of the credits allowable
11	under part IV of subchapter A (other than sub-
12	part C thereof, relating to refundable credits).
13	"(2) CARRYOVER OF UNUSED CREDIT.—If the
14	credit allowable under subsection (a) exceeds the
15	limitation imposed by paragraph (1) for such taxable
16	year, such excess shall be carried to the succeeding
17	taxable year and added to the credit allowable under
18	subsection (a) for such taxable year.
19	"(d) Qualified Tribal School Modernization
20	BOND; OTHER DEFINITIONS.—For purposes of this
21	section—
22	"(1) Qualified tribal school moderniza-
23	TION BOND.—
24	"(A) IN GENERAL.—The term 'qualified
25	tribal school modernization bond' means, sub-

1	ject to subparagraph (B), any bond issued as
2	part of an issue under section 2(c) of the In-
3	dian School Construction Act, as in effect on
4	the date of the enactment of this section, if—
5	"(i) 95 percent or more of the pro-
6	ceeds of such issue are to be used for the
7	construction, rehabilitation, or repair of a
8	school facility funded by the Bureau of In-
9	dian Affairs of the Department of the Inte-
10	rior or for the acquisition of land on which
11	such a facility is to be constructed with
12	part of the proceeds of such issue,
13	"(ii) the bond is issued by a tribe,
14	"(iii) the issuer designates such bond
15	for purposes of this section, and
16	"(iv) the term of each bond which is
17	part of such issue does not exceed 15
18	years.
19	"(B) NATIONAL LIMITATION ON AMOUNT
20	OF BONDS DESIGNATED.—
21	"(i) NATIONAL LIMITATION.—There is
22	a national qualified tribal school mod-
23	ernization bond limitation for each cal-
24	endar year. Such limitation is—
25	''(I) \$200,000,000 for 2002,

	277
1	((II) \$200,000,000 for 2003,
2	and
3	"(III) zero after 2003.
4	"(ii) Allocation of limitation.—
5	The national qualified tribal school mod-
6	ernization bond limitation shall be allo-
7	cated to tribes by the Secretary of the In-
8	terior subject to the provisions of section 2
9	of the Indian School Construction Act, as
10	in effect on the date of the enactment of
11	this section.
12	"(iii) Designation subject to limi-
13	TATION AMOUNT.—The maximum aggre-
14	gate face amount of bonds issued during
15	any calendar year which may be designated
16	under subsection $(d)(1)$ with respect to any
17	tribe shall not exceed the limitation
18	amount allocated to such government
19	under clause (ii) for such calendar year.
20	"(iv) Carryover of unused limita-
21	TION.—If for any calendar year—
22	"(I) the limitation amount under

this subparagraph, exceeds

1	"(II) the amount of qualified
2	
	tribal school modernization bonds
3	issued during such year,
4	the limitation amount under this subpara-
5	graph for the following calendar year shall
6	be increased by the amount of such excess.
7	The preceding sentence shall not apply if
8	such following calendar year is after 2010.
9	"(2) CREDIT ALLOWANCE DATE.—The term
10	'credit allowance date' means—
11	"(A) March 15,
12	"(B) June 15,
13	"(C) September 15, and
14	"(D) December 15.
15	Such term includes the last day on which the bond
16	is outstanding.
17	"(3) BOND.—The term 'bond' includes any ob-
18	ligation.
19	"(4) TRIBE.—The term "tribe" has the mean-
20	ing given the term "Indian tribal government" by
21	section $7701(a)(40)$, including the application of sec-
22	tion 7871(d). Such term includes any consortium of
23	tribes approved by the Secretary of the Interior.
24	"(e) Credit Included in Gross Income.—Gross
25	income includes the amount of the credit allowed to the

278

•S 7 IS

taxpayer under this section (determined without regard to
 subsection (c)) and the amount so included shall be treat ed as interest income.

4 "(f) BONDS HELD BY REGULATED INVESTMENT
5 COMPANIES.—If any qualified tribal school modernization
6 bond is held by a regulated investment company, the credit
7 determined under subsection (a) shall be allowed to share8 holders of such company under procedures prescribed by
9 the Secretary.

10 "(g) CREDITS MAY BE STRIPPED.—Under regula11 tions prescribed by the Secretary—

12 "(1) IN GENERAL.—There may be a separation 13 (including at issuance) of the ownership of a quali-14 fied tribal school modernization bond and the entitle-15 ment to the credit under this section with respect to 16 such bond. In case of any such separation, the credit 17 under this section shall be allowed to the person who 18 on the credit allowance date holds the instrument ev-19 idencing the entitlement to the credit and not to the 20 holder of the bond.

21 "(2) CERTAIN RULES TO APPLY.—In the case
22 of a separation described in paragraph (1), the rules
23 of section 1286 shall apply to the qualified tribal
24 school modernization bond as if it were a stripped

bond and to the credit under this section as if it
 were a stripped coupon.

3 "(h) TREATMENT FOR ESTIMATED TAX PUR-4 POSES.—Solely for purposes of sections 6654 and 6655, 5 the credit allowed by this section to a taxpayer by reason 6 of holding a qualified tribal school modernization bonds 7 on a credit allowance date shall be treated as if it were 8 a payment of estimated tax made by the taxpayer on such 9 date.

"(i) CREDIT MAY BE TRANSFERRED.—Nothing in
any law or rule of law shall be construed to limit the transferability of the credit allowed by this section through sale
and repurchase agreements.

14 "(j) CREDIT TREATED AS ALLOWED UNDER PART
15 IV OF SUBCHAPTER A.—For purposes of subtitle F, the
16 credit allowed by this section shall be treated as a credit
17 allowable under part IV of subchapter A of this chapter.
18 "(k) REPORTING.—Issuers of qualified tribal school
19 modernization bonds shall submit reports similar to the
20 reports required under section 149(e).".

21 (d) Additional Provisions.—

(1) SOVEREIGN IMMUNITY.—This section and
the amendments made by this section shall not be
construed to impact, limit, or affect the sovereign

1	immunity of the Federal Government or any State
2	or tribal government.
3	(2) APPLICATION.—This section and the
4	amendments made by this section shall take effect
5	on the date of the enactment of this Act with respect
6	to bonds issued after December 31, 2001, regardless
7	of the status of regulations promulgated thereunder.
8	CHAPTER 3–21ST CENTURY COMMUNITY
0	CHAPTER 3–2151 CENTURI COMMUNITI
o 9	LEARNING CENTERS
9	LEARNING CENTERS
9 10 11	LEARNING CENTERS SEC. 331. REAUTHORIZATION.
9 10 11 12	LEARNING CENTERS SEC. 331. REAUTHORIZATION. Section 10907 (20 U.S.C. 8247) is amended by strik-
9 10 11 12 13	LEARNING CENTERS SEC. 331. REAUTHORIZATION. Section 10907 (20 U.S.C. 8247) is amended by strik- ing "\$20,000,000 for fiscal year 1995" and all that fol-
9 10 11 12 13 14	LEARNING CENTERS SEC. 331. REAUTHORIZATION. Section 10907 (20 U.S.C. 8247) is amended by strik- ing "\$20,000,000 for fiscal year 1995" and all that fol- lows through the period and inserting "\$1,000,000,000

16 CHAPTER 4—ENHANCEMENT OF BASIC

17 LEARNING SKILLS

18 SEC. 341. REDUCING CLASS SIZE.

19 Title X (20 U.S.C. 8001 et seq.), as amended by sec-20 tion 311, is further amended by adding at the end the21 following:

1	"PART M—CLASS SIZE REDUCTION
2	"SEC. 10998. GRANTS FOR CLASS SIZE REDUCTION.
3	"(a) IN GENERAL.—From the amount appropriated
4	for a fiscal year under subsection (i), the Secretary of
5	Education—
6	((1) shall make available 1 percent of such
7	amount to the Secretary of the Interior (on behalf
8	of the Bureau of Indian Affairs) and the outlying
9	areas for activities under this section; and
10	((2) shall allocate the remainder by providing
11	each State the same percentage of that remainder as
12	it received of the funds allocated to States under
13	section $307(a)(2)$ of the Department of Education
14	Appropriations Act, 1999.
15	"(b) Allocation of Funds.—
16	"(1) IN GENERAL.—Each State that receives
17	funds under this section shall distribute 100 percent
18	of such funds to local educational agencies, of
19	which—
20	"(A) 80 percent of such amount shall be
21	allocated to such local educational agencies in
22	proportion to the number of children, aged 5 to
23	17, who reside in the school district served by
24	such local educational agency from families with
25	incomes below the poverty line (as defined by
26	the Office of Management and Budget and re-

1	vised annually in accordance with section
2	673(2) of the Community Services Block Grant
3	Act (42 U.S.C. 9902(2))) applicable to a family
4	of the size involved for the most recent fiscal
5	year for which satisfactory data are available
6	compared to the number of such individuals
7	who reside in the school districts served by all
8	the local educational agencies in the State for
9	that fiscal year; and
10	"(B) 20 percent of such amount shall be
11	allocated to such local educational agencies in
12	accordance with the relative enrollments of chil-
13	dren, aged 5 to 17, in public and private non-
14	profit elementary and secondary schools within
15	the boundaries of such agencies.

"(2) EXCEPTION.—Notwithstanding paragraph 16 17 (1), if the award to a local educational agency under 18 this section is less than the starting salary for a new 19 fully qualified teacher in that agency, who is cer-20 tified within the State (which may include certifi-21 cation through State or local alternative routes), has 22 a baccalaureate degree, and demonstrates the gen-23 eral knowledge, teaching skills, and subject matter knowledge required to teach in his or her content 24

1	areas, that agency may use funds under this section
2	to—
3	"(A) help pay the salary of a full- or part-
4	time teacher hired to reduce class size, which
5	may be in combination with other Federal,
6	State, or local funds; or
7	"(B) pay for activities described in sub-
8	section $(c)(2)(A)(iii)$ which may be related to
9	teaching in smaller classes.
10	"(c) USE OF FUNDS.—
11	"(1) PURPOSE, INTENT, AND GENERAL USE.—
12	The basic purpose and intent of this section is to re-
13	duce class size with fully qualified teachers. Each
14	local educational agency that receives funds under
15	this section shall use such funds to carry out effec-
16	tive approaches to reducing class size with fully
17	qualified teachers who are certified within the State,
18	including teachers certified through State or local al-
19	ternative routes, and who demonstrate competency
20	in the areas in which they teach, to improve edu-

cational achievement for both regular and special

needs children, with particular consideration given to

reducing class size in the early elementary grades

for which some research has shown class size reduc-

•S 7 IS

tion is most effective.

21

22

23

24

25

"(2) Specific uses.—

1

2 "(A) IN GENERAL.—Each such local edu3 cational agency may use funds under this sec4 tion for—

"(i) recruiting (including through the 5 6 use of signing bonuses, and other financial 7 incentives), hiring, and training fully quali-8 fied regular and special education teachers 9 (which may include hiring special edu-10 cation teachers to team-teach with regular 11 teachers in classrooms that contain both 12 children with disabilities and non-disabled 13 children) and teachers of special-needs 14 children who are certified within the State, 15 including teachers certified through State 16 or local alternative routes, have a bacca-17 laureate degree and demonstrate the gen-18 eral knowledge, teaching skills, and subject 19 matter knowledge required to teach in 20 their content areas;

21 "(ii) testing new teachers for aca22 demic content knowledge and to meet
23 State certification requirements that are
24 consistent with title II of the Higher Edu25 cation Act of 1965; and

1	"(iii) providing professional develop-
2	ment (which may include such activities as
3	those described in section 2210, opportuni-
4	ties for teachers to attend multi-week insti-
5	tutes, such as those made available during
6	the summer months that provide intensive
7	professional development in partnership
8	with local educational agencies and initia-
9	tives that promote retention and men-
10	toring), to teachers, including special edu-
11	cation teachers and teachers of special-
12	needs children, in order to meet the goal of
13	ensuring that all instructional staff have
14	the subject matter knowledge, teaching
15	knowledge, and teaching skills necessary to
16	teach effectively in the content area or
17	areas in which they provide instruction,
18	consistent with title II of the Higher Edu-
19	cation Act of 1965.
20	"(B) LIMITATION.—
21	"(i) IN GENERAL.—Except as pro-
22	vided under clause (ii), a local educational
23	agency may use not more than a total of
24	25 percent of the award received under

1	this section for activities described in
2	clauses (ii) and (iii) of subparagraph (A).
3	"(ii) EXCEPTION.—A local edu-
4	cational agency in which 10 percent or
5	more of teachers in elementary schools, as
6	defined by section 14101(14), have not
7	met applicable State and local certification
8	requirements (including certification
9	through State or local alternative routes),
10	or if such requirements have been waived,
11	may use more than 25 percent of the funds
12	it receives under this section for activities
13	described in subparagraph (A)(iii) to help
14	teachers who are not certified by the State
15	become certified, including through State
16	or local alternative routes, or to help teach-
17	ers affected by class size reduction who
18	lack sufficient content knowledge to teach
19	effectively in the areas they teach to obtain
20	that knowledge, if the local educational
21	agency notifies the State educational agen-
22	cy of the percentage of the funds that it
23	will use for the purpose described in this
24	clause.

"(C) Use for further reductions.—A
local educational agency that has already re-
duced class size in the early grades to 18 or
less children (or has already reduced class size
to a State or local class size reduction goal that
was in effect on the day before the enactment
of the Department of Education Appropriations
Act, 2000, if that State or local educational
agency goal is 20 or fewer children) may use
funds received under this section—
"(i) to make further class size reduc-
tions in grades kindergarten through 3;
"(ii) to reduce class size in other
grades; or
"(iii) to carry out activities to improve
teacher quality including professional de-
velopment.
"(D) Professional development.—If a
local educational agency has already reduced
class size in the early grades to 18 or fewer
children and intends to use funds provided
under this section to carry out professional de-
velopment activities, including activities to im-
prove teacher quality, then the State shall make
1 the award under subsection (b) to the local edu-2 cational agency. 3 "(3) SUPPLEMENT NOT SUPPLANT.—Each such 4 agency shall use funds under this section only to 5 supplement, and not to supplant, State and local 6 funds that, in the absence of such funds, would oth-7 erwise be spent for activities under this section. "(4) LIMITATION.—No funds made available 8 9 under this section may be used to increase the sala-10 ries or provide benefits, other than participation in 11 professional development and enrichment programs, 12 to teachers who are not hired under this section. 13 Funds under this section may be used to pay the 14 salary of teachers hired under section 307 of the De-15 partment of Education Appropriations Act, 1999, or 16 under section 310 of the Department of Education 17 Appropriations Act, 2000. 18 "(d) REPORTING.— 19 "(1) IN GENERAL.—Each State receiving funds 20 under this section shall report on activities in the

State under this section, consistent with section
6202(a)(2).

23 "(2) REPORTING TO PARENTS.—Each State
24 and local educational agency receiving funds under
25 this section shall publicly report to parents on its

1 progress in reducing class size, increasing the per-2 centage of classes in core academic areas taught by fully qualified teachers who are certified within the 3 4 State and demonstrate competency in the content 5 areas in which they teach, and on the impact that 6 hiring additional highly qualified teachers and reduc-7 ing class size, has had, if any, on increasing student 8 academic achievement.

9 "(3) PROVISION OF QUALIFICATION TO PAR10 ENTS.—Each school receiving funds under this sec11 tion shall provide to parents, upon request, the pro12 fessional qualifications of their child's teacher.

13 "(e) PROFESSIONAL DEVELOPMENT.—If a local edu-14 cational agency uses funds made available under this sec-15 tion for professional development activities, the agency 16 shall ensure for the equitable participation of private non-17 profit elementary and secondary schools in such activities. 18 Section 6402 shall not apply to other activities under this 19 section.

20 "(f) LIMITATION ON ADMINISTRATIVE COSTS.—A
21 local educational agency that receives funds under this
22 section may use not more than 3 percent of such funds
23 for local administrative costs.

24 "(g) APPLICATION.—Each local educational agency25 that desires to receive funds under this section shall in-

clude in the application required under section 6303 a de scription of the agency's program to reduce class size by
 hiring additional highly qualified teachers.

4 "(h) No Use of Funds for Payments to Certain 5 TEACHERS.—No funds under this section may be used to pay the salary of any teacher hired with funds under sec-6 7 tion 307 of the Department of Education Appropriations 8 Act, 1999, unless, by the start of the 2001–2002 school 9 year, the teacher is certified within the State (which may 10 include certification through State or local alternative routes) and demonstrates competency in the subject areas 11 12 in which he or she teaches.

13 "(i) NOTIFICATION.—Not later than 30 days after 14 the date of the enactment of this section, the Secretary 15 shall provide specific notification to each local educational 16 agency eligible to receive funds under this part regarding 17 the flexibility provided under subsection (c)(2)(B)(ii) and 18 the ability to use such funds to carry out activities de-19 scribed in subsection (c)(2)(A)(iii).

20 "(j) AUTHORIZATION OF APPROPRIATIONS.—There
21 is authorized to be appropriated to carry out this section—

- 22 "(1) \$2,317,507,723 for fiscal year 2002;
- 23 "(2) \$3,012,015,447 for fiscal year 2003;
- 24 "(3) \$3,706,523,170 for fiscal year 2004; and
- 25 "(4) \$4,401,030,983 for fiscal year 2005.".

292

1 SEC. 342. READING EXCELLENCE.

2 Part C of title II (20 U.S.C. 6661 et seq.) is
3 amended—

4 (1) by inserting after the part heading the fol-5 lowing:

6 "SEC. 2250. SHORT TITLE.

7 "This part may be cited as the 'Reading Excellence8 Act'.";

9 (2) in section 2253(a) (20 U.S.C. 6661b(a)) by
10 adding at the end the following:

11 "(3) AMOUNT OF GRANTS.—From the amount 12 appropriated for each fiscal year under section 13 2260(a), the Secretary shall award to each State 14 educational agency a grant under this part in an 15 amount that is in proportion to the amount the 16 State received under part A of title I for the pre-17 vious fiscal year.";

18 (3) in section 2255 (20 U.S.C. 6661d) by add19 ing at the end the following:

20 "(f) OTHER USES.—With respect to a State edu-21 cational agency that has used amounts received under a 22 grant under section 2253 in a previous fiscal year to suffi-23 ciently serve schools described in subsection (a)(1), such 24 State agency may use amounts received under such a 25 grant in succeeding fiscal years to provide subgrants to

1	local educational agencies to assist other schools that may	
2	receive assistance under title I."; and	
3	(4) in section 2260(a) (20 U.S.C. 6661i(a)) by	
4	adding at the end the following:	
5	"(3) Other fiscal years.—There are author-	
6	ized to be appropriated to carry out this part and	
7	section 1202(c)—	
8	"(A) \$500,000,000 for fiscal year 2002;	
9	"(B) \$600,000,000 for fiscal year 2003;	
10	"(C) \$700,000,000 for fiscal year 2004;	
11	"(D) \$850,000,000 for fiscal year 2005;	
12	and	
13	((E) \$1,000,000,000 for fiscal year)	
14	2006.".	
15	SEC. 343. TUTORIAL ASSISTANCE GRANTS.	
16	(a) IN GENERAL.—Section 2256 (20 U.S.C. 6661e)	
17	is repealed.	
18	(b) Conforming Amendments.—Part C of title II	
19	(20 U.S.C. 6661 et seq.) is amended—	
20	(1) in section 2253 (20 U.S.C. 6661b)—	
21	(A) in subsection $(a)(1)$, by striking "sec-	
22	tions 2254 through 2256" and inserting "sec-	
23	tions 2254 and 2255"; and	

294

1	(i) in subparagraph (A)(ii), by strik-
2	ing "sections 2255 and 2256" and insert-
3	ing "section 2255";
4	(ii) in subparagraph (B)—
5	(I) in clause (ii), by striking
6	"section 2255 and 2256" and insert-
7	ing "section 2255"; and
8	(II) in clause (vi), , by striking
9	"sections 2255 and 2256" and insert-
10	ing "section 2255"; and
11	(iii) in subparagraph (E)(iii)—
12	(I) by striking "sections
13	2255(a)(1) and 2256(a)(1)" and in-
14	serting "section 2255(a)(1)"; and
15	(II) by striking "sections 2255
16	and 2256" and inserting "section
17	2255'';
18	(2) in section 2254 (20 U.S.C. 6661c)—
19	(A) in paragraph (1)—
20	(i) by striking "(excluding section
21	2256)"; and
22	(ii) by striking "; and" and inserting
23	a period;

1	(B) by striking "2253—" and all that fol-	
2	lows through "shall use" in paragraph (1) and	
3	inserting "2253 shall use"; and	
4	(C) by striking in paragraph (2); and	
5	(3) in section 2258(a) (20 U.S.C. 6661h(a)), by	
6	5 striking "or 2256".	
7	CHAPTER 5—INTEGRATION OF TECHNOLOGY	
8	INTO THE CLASSROOM	
9	SEC. 351. SHORT TITLE.	
10	This chapter may be cited as the "Training for Tech-	
11	nology Act of 2001".	
12	SEC. 352. LOCAL APPLICATIONS FOR SCHOOL TECH-	
13	NOLOGY RESOURCE GRANTS.	
14	Section 3135 (20 U.S.C. 6845) is amended—	
15	(1) in the first sentence, by inserting "(a) IN	
16		
10	GENERAL.—" before "Each local educational agen-	
17	GENERAL.—" before "Each local educational agen- cy";	
17	су";	
17 18	cy"; (2) in subsection (a) (as so redesignated)—	
17 18 19	cy"; (2) in subsection (a) (as so redesignated)— (A) in paragraph (3)(B), by striking ";	
17 18 19 20	cy"; (2) in subsection (a) (as so redesignated)— (A) in paragraph (3)(B), by striking "; and" and inserting a semicolon;	
 17 18 19 20 21 	 cy"; (2) in subsection (a) (as so redesignated)— (A) in paragraph (3)(B), by striking "; and" and inserting a semicolon; (B) in paragraph (4), by striking the pe- 	

1	"(5) demonstrate the manner in which the local
2	educational agency will utilize at least 30 percent of
3	the amounts provided to the agency under this sub-
4	part in each fiscal year to provide for in-service
5	teacher training, or that the agency is using at least
6	30 percent of its total technology funding available
7	to the agency from all sources (including Federal,
8	State, and local sources) to provide in-service teach-
9	er training.";
10	(3) by redesignating subsections (d) and (e) as
11	subsections (b) and (c) respectively; and
12	(4) in subsection (c) (as so redesignated), by
13	striking "subsection (e)" and inserting "subsection
14	(a)".
15	SEC. 353. TEACHER PREPARATION.
16	Part A of title III (20 U.S.C. 6811 et seq.) is amend-
17	ed by adding at the end the following:
18	"Subpart 5—Preparing Tomorrow's Teachers To Use
19	Technology
20	"SEC. 3161. PURPOSE; PROGRAM AUTHORITY.
21	"(a) PURPOSE.—It is the purpose of this subpart to
22	assist consortia of public and private entities in carrying
23	out programs that prepare prospective teachers to use ad-
24	vanced technology to foster learning environments condu-
25	cive to preparing all students to achieve to challenging

State and local content and student performance stand ards.

3 "(b) Program Authority.—

"(1) IN GENERAL.—The Secretary is author-4 5 ized, through the Office of Educational Technology, 6 to award grants, contracts, or cooperative agree-7 ments on a competitive basis to eligible applicants in 8 order to assist them in developing or redesigning 9 teacher preparation programs to enable prospective 10 teachers to use technology effectively in their class-11 rooms.

"(2) PERIOD OF AWARD.—The Secretary may
award grants, contracts, or cooperative agreements
under this subpart for a period of not more than 5
years.

16 "SEC. 3162. ELIGIBILITY.

17 "(a) ELIGIBLE APPLICANTS.—In order to receive an
18 award under this subpart, an applicant shall be a consor19 tium that includes—

20 "(1) at least 1 institution of higher education
21 that offers a baccalaureate degree and prepares
22 teachers for their initial entry into teaching;

23 "(2) at least 1 State educational agency or local
24 educational agency; and

25 "(3) 1 or more of the following entities:

1	"(A) an institution of higher education	
2	(other than the institution described in para-	
3	graph (1) ;	
4	"(B) a school or department of education	
5	at an institution of higher education;	
6	"(C) a school or college of arts and	
7	sciences at an institution of higher education;	
8	"(D) a professional association, founda-	
9	tion, museum, library, for-profit business, pub-	
10	lic or private nonprofit organization, commu-	
11	nity-based organization, or other entity with the	
12	capacity to contribute to the technology-related	
13	reform of teacher preparation programs.	
14	"(b) Application Requirements.—In order to re-	
15	ceive an award under this subpart, an eligible applicant	
16	shall submit an application to the Secretary at such time,	
17	and containing such information, as the Secretary may re-	
18	quire. Such application shall include—	
19	"(1) a description of the proposed project, in-	
20	cluding how the project would ensure that individ-	
21	uals participating in the project would be prepared	
22	to use technology to create learning environments	
23	conducive to preparing all students, including girls	
24	and students who have economic and educational	

1	disadvantages, to achieve to challenging State and	
2	local content and student performance standards;	
3	"(2) a demonstration of—	
4	"(A) the commitment, including the finan-	
5	cial commitment, of each of the members of the	
6	consortium; and	
7	"(B) the active support of the leadership of	
8	each member of the consortium for the pro-	
9	posed project;	
10	"(3) a description of how each member of the	
11	consortium would be included in project activities;	
12	"(4) a description of how the proposed project	
13	would be continued once the Federal funds awarded	
14	under this subpart end; and	
15	"(5) a plan for the evaluation of the program,	
16	which shall include benchmarks to monitor progress	
17	toward specific project objectives.	
18	"(c) Matching Requirements.—	
19	"(1) IN GENERAL.—The Federal share of the	
20	cost of any project funded under this subpart shall	
21	not exceed 50 percent. Except as provided in para-	
22	graph (2), the non-Federal share of such project	
23	may be in cash or in kind, fairly evaluated, including	
24	services.	

1 "(2) ACQUISITION OF EQUIPMENT.—Not more 2 than 10 percent of the funds awarded for a project 3 under this subpart may be used to acquire equip-4 ment, networking capabilities, or infrastructure, and 5 the non-Federal share of the cost of any such acqui-6 sition shall be in cash.

7 "SEC. 3163. USE OF FUNDS.

8 "(a) REQUIRED USES.—A recipient shall use funds
9 under this subpart for—

10 "(1) creating programs that enable prospective 11 teachers to use advanced technology to create learn-12 ing environments conducive to preparing all stu-13 dents, including girls and students who have eco-14 nomic and educational disadvantages, to achieve to 15 challenging State and local content and student per-16 formance standards; and

"(2) evaluating the effectiveness of the project.
"(b) PERMISSIBLE USES.—A recipient may use funds
under this subpart for activities, described in its application, that carry out the purposes of this subpart, such
as—

22 "(1) developing and implementing high-quality
23 teacher preparation programs that enable educators
24 to—

1	"(A) learn the full range of resources that
2	can be accessed through the use of technology;
3	"(B) integrate a variety of technologies
4	into the classroom in order to expand students'
5	knowledge;
6	"(C) evaluate educational technologies and
7	their potential for use in instruction; and
8	"(D) help students develop their own tech-
9	nical skills and digital learning environments;
10	"(2) developing alternative teacher development
11	paths that provide elementary schools and secondary
12	schools with well-prepared, technology-proficient
13	educators;
14	"(3) developing performance-based standards
15	and aligned assessments to measure the capacity of
16	prospective teachers to use technology effectively in
17	their classrooms;
18	"(4) providing technical assistance to other
19	teacher preparation programs;
20	"(5) developing and disseminating resources
21	and information in order to assist institutions of
22	higher education to prepare teachers to use tech-
23	nology effectively in their classrooms; and

1	"(6) subject to section $3162(c)(2)$, acquiring
2	equipment, networking capabilities, and infrastruc-
3	ture to carry out the project.
4	"SEC. 3164. AUTHORIZATION OF APPROPRIATIONS.
5	"For purposes of carrying out this subpart, there is
6	authorized to be appropriated \$150,000,000 for fiscal year
7	2002, and such sums as may be necessary for each of the
8	4 succeeding fiscal years.".
9	SEC. 354. PROFESSIONAL DEVELOPMENT.
10	Section $3141(b)(2)(A)$ (20 U.S.C. $6861(b)(2)(A)$) is
11	amended—
12	(1) in clause (i), by striking "and" at the end;
13	(2) in clause (ii)(V), by adding "and" after the
14	semicolon; and
15	(3) by adding at the end the following:
16	"(iii) the provision of incentives, in-
17	cluding bonus payments, to recognized
18	educators who achieve the National Edu-
19	cation Technology Standards, or an infor-
20	mation technology certification that is di-
21	rectly related to the curriculum or content
22	area in which the teacher provides instruc-

tion;". 23

TITLE IV—INDIVIDUALS WITH DISABILITIES EDUCATION ACT

3 SEC. 401. FULL FUNDING OF IDEA.

4 (a) FULL FUNDING.—In additional to any amounts
5 otherwise appropriated, there are appropriated to carry
6 out part B of the Individuals with Disabilities Education
7 Act (20 U.S.C. 1411 et seq.), \$2,000,000,000 for fiscal
8 year 2002.

9 (b) SENSE OF THE SENATE.—

10 (1) FINDINGS.—The Senate makes the fol-11 lowing findings:

12 (A) Before the Individuals with Disabilities 13 Education Act (20 U.S.C. 1400 et seq.) (re-14 ferred to in this subsection as "IDEA") was en-15 acted in 1975, as many as 4,000,000 children 16 were denied appropriate educational services. 17 Few disabled preschoolers received services. 18 1,000,000 children with disabilities were ex-19 cluded from public school. Courts ruled this 20 practice was unconstitutional.

(B) States asked the Federal Government
to help them fund educational services to disabled children. Congress responded by enacting
IDEA to ensure that disabled children received
appropriate services and to provide financial

support to the States for providing these services.

3 (C) Since the enactment of IDEA, schools 4 have been serving disabled children, helping 5 them develop their skills and abilities and go on 6 productive and independent lives. lead to 7 Today, IDEA serves 5,400,000 children with 8 disabilities from birth through age 21. Every 9 State offers public education and early intervention services for children with disabilities. 10 11 Fewer than 6,000 disabled children now live in 12 institutional settings away from their families, 13 compared to 95,000 such children in 1969. The 14 number of disabled students completing high 15 school with a diploma or certificate has in-16 creased by 10 percent in the last decade. The 17 number of students with disabilities entering 18 higher education has more than tripled since 19 the implementation of IDEA.

20 (D) When IDEA was enacted, the legisla21 tion included a goal to provide 40 percent of
22 the cost of providing services for these students.

(E) The cost of providing special education has increased significantly for school districts across the country. The Federal Government

1

2

23

24

25

1	currently provides about 15 percent of the na-
2	tional average per pupil expenditure for IDEA
3	students.
4	(F) IDEA will be up for reauthorization
5	for fiscal year 2003.
6	(2) Sense of the senate.—It is the sense of
7	the Senate that—
8	(A) when Congress reauthorizes the IDEA
9	program, it should ensure that the Federal Gov-
10	ernment will reach the goal of providing 40 per-
11	cent of the national average per pupil expendi-
12	ture under IDEA; and
13	(B) disabled children will benefit from ef-
14	forts to help schools hire and train high quality
15	teachers and principals, reduce class size, ren-
16	ovate overcrowded and crumbling buildings, in-
17	tegrate technology into the classroom, strength-
18	en early literacy programs, and increase the
19	availability of after-school learning opportuni-
20	ties.
21	TITLE V—MAKING HIGHER
22	EDUCATION MORE AFFORDABLE
23	SEC. 501. INCREASE IN MAXIMUM PELL GRANT.
24	(a) FINDINGS.—Congress makes the following find-
25	ings:

1	(1) A college education has become increasingly
2	important, not just to the individual beneficiary, but
3	to the nation as a whole. The growth and continued
4	expansion of the nation's economy is heavily depend-
5	ent on an educated and highly skilled workforce.
6	(2) The opportunity to gain a college education
7	also is important to the nation as a means to help
8	advance the American ideals of progress and equal-
9	ity.
10	(3) The Federal Government plays an invalu-
11	able role in making student financial aid available to
12	ensure that qualified students are able to attend col-
13	lege, regardless of their financial means. Since the
14	inception of the Pell Grant program in 1973, nearly
15	80,000,000 grants have helped low- and middle-in-
16	come students go to college, enrich their lives, and
17	become productive members of society.
18	(4) Nationwide, almost 70 percent of high
19	school graduates continue on to higher education.
20	This degree of college participation would not exist
21	without the Federal investment in student aid, espe-
22	cially the Pell Grant program. Nearly 25 percent of
23	low- and middle-income students receive some
24	amount of Pell Grant funding.

(5) In the next 10 years, the number of under-1 2 graduate students enrolled in the nation's colleges 3 and universities will increase by 11 percent to more 4 than 11,000,000 students. Many of these students 5 will be the first in their families to attend college. 6 One in 5 of these students will be from families with 7 incomes below the poverty level. The continued in-8 vestment in the Pell Grant program is essential if 9 college is to remain an achievable part of the Amer-10 ican dream. 11 (6) Increasing the maximum Pell Grant to 12 \$4,700 would allow approximately 430,000 addi-13 tional students to benefit from the program. 14 (7) Increasing the maximum Pell Grant to 15 \$4,700 would result in an \$800 increase in the aver-16 age grant award. 17 (8) Because Pell Grant recipients are more like-18 ly to graduate with student loan debt and to amass 19 more debt than other student borrowers, increasing 20 the maximum Pell Grant to \$4,700 by fiscal year 21 2004 will help remedy this disparity. 22 (b) SENSE OF THE SENATE.—It is the sense of the 23 Senate the maximum Pell Grant should be increased to

\$4,700.

24

1 SEC. 502. DEDUCTION FOR HIGHER EDUCATION EXPENSES.

2 (a) DEDUCTION ALLOWED.—Part VII of subchapter
3 B of chapter 1 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986 (re4 lating to additional itemized deductions for individuals) is
5 amended by redesignating section 222 as section 223 and
6 by inserting after section 221 the following:

7 "SEC. 222. HIGHER EDUCATION EXPENSES.

8 "(a) Allowance of Deduction.—

9 "(1) IN GENERAL.—In the case of an indi-10 vidual, there shall be allowed as a deduction an 11 amount equal to the applicable dollar amount of the 12 qualified higher education expenses paid by the tax-13 payer during the taxable year.

14 "(2) APPLICABLE DOLLAR AMOUNT.—The ap15 plicable dollar amount for any taxable year shall be
16 determined as follows:

	Applicable
"Taxable year:	dollar amount:
2002	\$4,000
2003	\$8,000
2004 and thereafter	\$12,000.

17 "(b) LIMITATION BASED ON MODIFIED ADJUSTED
18 GROSS INCOME.—
19 "(1) IN GENERAL.—The amount which would
20 (but for this subsection) be taken into account under

21 subsection (a) shall be reduced (but not below zero)

by the amount determined under paragraph (2).

1	"(2) Amount of reduction.—The amount
2	determined under this paragraph equals the amount
3	which bears the same ratio to the amount which
4	would be so taken into account as—
5	"(A) the excess of—
6	"(i) the taxpayer's modified adjusted
7	gross income for such taxable year, over
8	"(ii) \$62,450 (\$104,050 in the case of
9	a joint return, \$89,150 in the case of a re-
10	turn filed by a head of household, and
11	\$52,025 in the case of a return by a mar-
12	ried individual filing separately), bears to
13	"(B) \$15,000.
14	"(3) Modified adjusted gross income.—
15	For purposes of this subsection, the term 'modified
16	adjusted gross income' means the adjusted gross in-
17	come of the taxpayer for the taxable year
18	determined—
19	"(A) without regard to this section and
20	sections 911, 931, and 933, and
21	"(B) after the application of sections 86,
22	135, 219, 220, and 469.
23	For purposes of the sections referred to in subpara-
24	graph (B), adjusted gross income shall be deter-

	010
1	mined without regard to the deduction allowed under
2	this section.
3	"(c) Qualified Higher Education Expenses.—
4	For purposes of this section—
5	"(1) QUALIFIED HIGHER EDUCATION EX-
6	PENSES.—
7	"(A) IN GENERAL.—The term 'qualified
8	higher education expenses' means tuition and
9	fees charged by an educational institution and
10	required for the enrollment or attendance of—
11	"(i) the taxpayer,
12	"(ii) the taxpayer's spouse,
13	"(iii) any dependent of the taxpayer
14	with respect to whom the taxpayer is al-
15	lowed a deduction under section 151, or
16	"(iv) any grandchild of the taxpayer,
17	as an eligible student at an institution of higher
18	education.
19	"(B) ELIGIBLE COURSES.—Amounts paid
20	for qualified higher education expenses of any
21	individual shall be taken into account under
22	subsection (a) only to the extent such
23	expenses—
24	"(i) are attributable to courses of in-
25	struction for which credit is allowed toward

1	a baccalaureate degree by an institution of
2	higher education or toward a certificate of
3	required course work at a vocational
4	school, and
5	"(ii) are not attributable to any grad-
6	uate program of such individual.
7	"(C) EXCEPTION FOR NONACADEMIC
8	FEES.—Such term does not include any student
9	activity fees, athletic fees, insurance expenses,
10	or other expenses unrelated to a student's aca-
11	demic course of instruction.
12	"(D) ELIGIBLE STUDENT.—For purposes
13	of subparagraph (A), the term 'eligible student'
14	means a student who—
15	"(i) meets the requirements of section
16	484(a)(1) of the Higher Education Act of
17	1965 (20 U.S.C. 1091(a)(1)), as in effect
18	on the date of the enactment of this sec-
19	tion, and
20	"(ii) is carrying at least one-half the
21	normal full-time work load for the course
22	of study the student is pursuing, as deter-
23	mined by the institution of higher edu-
24	cation.

1	"(E) Identification requirement.—No
2	deduction shall be allowed under subsection (a)
3	to a taxpayer with respect to an eligible student
4	unless the taxpayer includes the name, age, and
5	taxpayer identification number of such eligible
6	student on the return of tax for the taxable
7	year.
8	"(2) INSTITUTION OF HIGHER EDUCATION.—
9	The term 'institution of higher education' means an
10	institution which—
11	"(A) is described in section 481 of the
12	Higher Education Act of 1965 (20 U.S.C.
13	1088), as in effect on the date of the enactment
14	of this section, and
15	"(B) is eligible to participate in programs
16	under title IV of such Act.
17	"(d) Special Rules.—
18	"(1) NO DOUBLE BENEFIT.—
19	"(A) IN GENERAL.—No deduction shall be
20	allowed under subsection (a) for any expense
21	for which a deduction is allowable to the tax-
22	payer under any other provision of this chapter
23	unless the taxpayer irrevocably waives his right
24	to the deduction of such expense under such
25	other provision.

1	"(B) DENIAL OF DEDUCTION IF CREDIT
2	ELECTED.—No deduction shall be allowed
3	under subsection (a) for a taxable year with re-
4	spect to the qualified higher education expenses
5	of an individual if the taxpayer elects to have
6	section 25A apply with respect to such indi-
7	vidual for such year.
8	"(C) DEPENDENTS.—No deduction shall
9	be allowed under subsection (a) to any indi-
10	vidual with respect to whom a deduction under
11	section 151 is allowable to another taxpayer for
12	a taxable year beginning in the calendar year in
13	which such individual's taxable year begins.
14	"(D) Coordination with exclusions.—
15	A deduction shall be allowed under subsection
16	(a) for qualified higher education expenses only
17	to the extent the amount of such expenses ex-
18	ceeds the amount excludable under section 135
19	or $530(d)(2)$ for the taxable year.
20	"(2) LIMITATION ON TAXABLE YEAR OF DE-
21	DUCTION.—
22	"(A) IN GENERAL.—A deduction shall be
23	allowed under subsection (a) for qualified high-
24	er education expenses for any taxable year only
25	to the extent such expenses are in connection

1	with enrollment at an institution of higher edu-
2	cation during the taxable year.
3	"(B) CERTAIN PREPAYMENTS ALLOWED.—
4	Subparagraph (A) shall not apply to qualified
5	higher education expenses paid during a taxable
6	year if such expenses are in connection with an
7	academic term beginning during such taxable
8	year or during the first 3 months of the next
9	taxable year.
10	"(3) Adjustment for certain scholar-
11	SHIPS AND VETERANS BENEFITS.—The amount of
12	qualified higher education expenses otherwise taken
13	into account under subsection (a) with respect to the
14	education of an individual shall be reduced (before
15	the application of subsection (b)) by the sum of the
16	amounts received with respect to such individual for
17	the taxable year as—
18	"(A) a qualified scholarship which under
19	section 117 is not includable in gross income,
20	"(B) an educational assistance allowance
21	under chapter 30, 31, 32, 34, or 35 of title 38,
22	United States Code, or
23	"(C) a payment (other than a gift, be-
24	quest, devise, or inheritance within the meaning
25	of section 102(a)) for educational expenses, or

1 attributable to enrollment at an eligible edu-2 cational institution, which is exempt from in-3 come taxation by any law of the United States. "(4) NO DEDUCTION FOR MARRIED INDIVID-4 5 UALS FILING SEPARATE RETURNS.—If the taxpayer 6 is a married individual (within the meaning of section 7703), this section shall apply only if the tax-7 8 payer and the taxpayer's spouse file a joint return 9 for the taxable year.

10 "(5) NONRESIDENT ALIENS.—If the taxpayer is 11 a nonresident alien individual for any portion of the 12 taxable year, this section shall apply only if such in-13 dividual is treated as a resident alien of the United 14 States for purposes of this chapter by reason of an 15 election under subsection (g) or (h) of section 6013.

"(6) REGULATIONS.—The Secretary may prescribe such regulations as may be necessary or appropriate to carry out this section, including regulations requiring recordkeeping and information reporting.".

(b) DEDUCTION ALLOWED IN COMPUTING ADJUSTED GROSS INCOME.—Section 62(a) of the Internal
Revenue Code of 1986 is amended by inserting after paragraph (17) the following:

"(18) HIGHER EDUCATION EXPENSES.—The 1 2 deduction allowed by section 222.". 3 (c) CONFORMING AMENDMENT.—The table of sections for part VII of subchapter B of chapter 1 of the 4 5 Internal Revenue Code of 1986 is amended by striking the item relating to section 222 and inserting the following: 6 "Sec. 222. Higher education expenses. "Sec. 223. Cross reference.". 7 (d) EFFECTIVE DATE.—The amendments made by

8 this section shall apply to payments made in taxable years
9 beginning after December 31, 2001.

 \bigcirc